VersaWorks 7

Master Guide

Thank you very much for purchasing this product.

- To ensure correct and safe usage with a full understanding of this product's performance, please be sure to read through this guide completely.
- Unauthorized copying or transferal, in whole or in part, of this guide is prohibited.
- The specifications of this product and the contents of this guide are subject to change without notice.
- The guide and the product have been prepared and tested as much as possible. If you find any misprints or errors, please inform us.
- Roland DG Corporation assumes no responsibility for any direct or indirect loss or damage that may occur through use of this product, regardless of any failure to perform on the part of this product.
- Roland DG Corporation assumes no responsibility for any direct or indirect loss or damage that may occur with respect to any article made using this product.

Company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Copyright © 2025 - 2026 Roland DG Corporation

R10-260924

https://www.rolanddg.com/

Roland DG Corporation

Contents

Function Settings 6

VersaWorks Settings 7

Efficiency Settings 8

Setting the Number of Simultaneous RIP Processing Operations 8

Setting the Number of Simultaneous Printing Operations 9

Printing Only Once at All Times 10

Useful Settings 11

Setting Warning Displays According to the Amount of Remaining Ink 11

Customizing the Display of the [**Settings**] and [**Queue Properties**] Tabs 12

Configuring Hot Folder Settings for Summa GoSign 13

Other Settings 14

Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use 14

Increasing Memory 15

Hiding the Queue Folder Identification in the Layout Window 16

Preventing Update Notifications 17

Checking the Link Settings with External Applications 18

Update 19

Using the Latest Version of VersaWorks 19

Performing Updates According to Their Details 21

Checking the Version Information 24

Backing Up Data 25

Saving VersaWorks Settings and Jobs for Later Use 25

Initialization 27

Initializing VersaWorks 27

Outputting from Other Computers 30

Outputting from the Client 30

Outputting from Design Software 35

Outputting Using a Hot Folder 37

Finding Jobs and Checking the Job Log 38

Searching for Jobs 38

Checking and Managing the Job Log Information 39

Job and Queue Folder Settings 43

Layout Settings 44

Setting the Size of the Material 44

Zooming In / Zooming Out 45

Setting the Printing Position 46

Setting the Number of Copies to Print 47

Setting the Spacing from the Adjacent Image 48

Mirroring the Image 50

Rotating the Image 51

Adjusting the Printing Position in the Layout Area 52

Changing the Ratio of the Image Width to Height 54

Printing with the Same Top-Bottom Orientation as the Print Data 55

Printer Control Settings 56

Cutting the Media after Output 56

Setting the Space to the Next Printing Start Location 58

Determining How to Alleviate Horizontal Bands: [**Feed Calibration Controls**] 59

Using Media That Wrinkles Easily/Does Not Move Smoothly: [**Vacuum Power**] 60

Setting the Drying Time after Printing 61

Adjusting Print Head Height to Match Media Thickness 62

Setting the Heater/Dryer Temperature 63

Reducing the UV Lamp Irradiation Intensity 64

Correcting the Dimensions in the Printing Results 65

Performing Only UV Lamp Irradiation 66

Adding Jobs That Perform Only UV Lamp Irradiation after Printing 67
Limiting Print Heads Used for Printing: [**Nozzle Mask**] 68
Print Quality Settings 69
Setting the Halftone 69
Selecting the Interpolation Used for Scaling 70
Setting the Direction of the Print Head 71
Setting the Print Head Speed 72
Setting the Optimizer Ink Amount 73
Efficiency Settings 74
Reducing the Amount of Media Used 74
Automating Processing by the RIP and Printing 77
Printing while Processing by the RIP 79
Outputting Multiple Jobs at Once 80
Adding a Name to a Queue Folder 81
Reuse Settings 82
Saving and Reusing Printed Jobs 82
Reusing Queue Folder Settings 89
Reusing Job Settings 93

Printing Settings 96
Printing with Added Marks and Information 97
Adding Trim Marks or Margin Marks 97
Adding Job Properties 101
Adding an Overlap Width for Tiled Printing 103
Adding Color Bars 106
Specifying the Printing Area, Print Count, and Overprinting Count When Printing 107
Printing the Selected Area of the Image: [**Clip Image**] 107
Tiling an Image 111
Printing a Single Image Side by Side: [**Step & Repeat**] 114
Performing Overprinting: [**Overprint**] 116
Printing Specific Layers 117
Printing Specific Layers of the Print Data 117
Printing That Combines Data Files and Templates: [**Variable Data**] 120
What Is Variable Printing? 120
Creating a Layout Template in VersaWorks 131
Creating Templates with Illustration Software 132
Editing a Data File 134
Creating, Editing, and Exporting a Data File 135
Printing Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other 137
Printing Multiple Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other 137
Composing TIFF Image Print Data: [**Compose Job**] 144
Composing PDF Print Data: [**Compose Job**] 146
Printing Using the Rotary Axis Unit 147
Printing on a Cylindrical Object 147
Printing Using Structural Ink 149
Configuring Cutting Settings for Landscape Print Data 150
Gradation Printing 152
Printing with Smooth Gradations 152
Printing with a Cylindrical Printer 153
Printing on a Cylindrical Object 153
Specifying the Printing Position in the Rotation Direction 155

Media Settings 157
What Is Media? 158
Media List 158
Registering New Media 160
Step 1: Creating New Media 160
Step 2: Preparing to Create a Profile 161

Step 3: Creating a Profile 163
Step 4: Registering a Profile 164
Step 5: Configuring the Default Printer Control Settings 165
Step 6: Finalizing the Registration of the New Media 167
Using Existing Media 168
Customizing Media 168
Using Media [**Color Settings**] 169
Saving the Media File 171
Using an Existing Media File 172
Importing Media Files into VersaWorks 173
Loading Saved Media Files 174
Deleting the Media 175

Cutting Settings 176
Configuring the Cutting Conditions 177
Step 1: Performing Test Cutting 177
Step 2: Configuring the Cutting Conditions 179
Changing Cutting Line Colors: Job Assistant 181
Other Cutting 182
Performing Perforated Cutting at Image Boundaries 182
Laminating and Cutting After Printing: Cutting with Crop Marks 184

Color Management 188

Output Color Settings 189
Adjusting the Output Colors 190
Visually Selecting the Color Settings: [**Quick Setup**] 190
Selecting the Color Setting from the List 192
Adjusting the Color Saturation, Contrast, and Brightness of the Entire Image 194
Adjusting the Tone Curve 195
Customizing the Color Settings 198
Specifying Color Settings for Each Object 201
Obtaining a Stable Output Color 206
Matching Different Printer Output Colors 214
Using the Color Matching Function (Add-on) 217
Obtaining a Stable Output Color (Add-on) 218
Matching Output Colors Between Different Printers (Add-on) 221

Printing for Quality and Color Comparisons 229
Printing While Changing Settings in Small Increments: [**Variation Job**] 230
Step 1: Generating a Variation Job 230
Step 2: Adjusting the Printing Size and Printing 234
Step 3: Evaluating Variation Printing for Application to a Job 235

Spot Color 236
What Is [**Spot Color**]? 237
Printing with [**Spot Color**] 238
Step 1: Select [**Spot Color**]. 238
Step 2: Creating Print Data with Illustration Software 239
Step 3: Performing Printing 240
Printing Using the Roland Color System Library 242
Step 1: Printing a Color Chart 242
Step 2: Registering Roland Color System Library Colors in Illustration Software 245
Step 3: Creating Print Data with Illustration Software 248
Step 4: Performing Printing 249
Printing Using White Ink/Gloss Ink/Primer/Metallic Silver Ink/Structural Ink 250
Step 1: Registering a Spot Color in Illustration Software 250
Step 2: Creating Print Data with Illustration Software 253

Step 3: Performing Printing 254
Generation of Spot Color Plates (White, Gloss, Primer, Etc.) 255
[**Special Color Plate Generation**] Function ([**Settings**]) 255
Spot Color Plate Generation with [**Job Assistant**] 259
Adjusting the Position and Size of Spot Color Plates 264
Correcting the Position of Spot Color Plates 264
Correcting the Size of Spot Color Plates 266
Other Spot Color Functions 268
Replacing or Fine-tuning the Output Color of a [**Spot Color**] 268
Assigning a Color from Another Spot Color Library to a Newly Created Spot Color Library 270
Assigning White/Metallic Silver/Gloss/Primer/Structural to a [**Spot Color**] in Existing Print Data 271
Importing a [**Spot Color**] and Creating a Spot Color Library 273
Taking Advantage of TIFF's Extra Channels 274
Adjusting the Output Color of a [**Spot Color**]: [**Nearest Color Finder**] 275
Step 1: Printing the [**Spot Color**] Chart 275
Step 2: Selecting and Applying the Desired Color 277
Managing the [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] 279
Readjusting the Adjustment Results in [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] 281
Using [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] in Other Computers 282
Using a Spot Color Library 283
Creating a Spot Color Library 283
Saving the Spot Color Library as a File 285
Importing a Saved Spot Color Library 286
Deleting a Spot Color Library 287
Replicating and Editing a Spot Color Library 288
Switching the Spot Color Library to Use 289
[**Spot Color**] Usage Examples 290
Specifying [**Spot Color**] in [**Settings**] 290

Special Color 292
What Is [**Special Color**]? 293
Printing with [**Special Color**] 294
Step 1: Set the [**Special Color**] 294
Step 2: Performing Printing 296
Other Special Color Functions 297
Saving the Special Color Library as a File 297
Replicating and Editing the Special Color Library 298
Deleting a Special Color Library 299
Registering a Color by Measuring with an Instrument 300
Fine-tuning the Output Color of a [**Special Color**] 302

Appendix 304

Function List 305
Menu Bar List 306
[**File**] 306
[**Edit**] 307
[**View**] 310
[**Help**] 311
Hamburger Menu List 312
[**Settings**] List 314
[**Layout**] 314
[**Quality**] 316
[**Color Management**] 320
[**Color Replacement**] 325
[**Mark**] 326
[**Printer Controls**] 329
[**Cut Controls**] 332

[Job Management] 334
[Clip and Tile] 336
[Variable Data] 338
[Customize] 341

Function Settings

VersaWorks Settings

Efficiency Settings 8
- Setting the Number of Simultaneous RIP Processing Operations 8
- Setting the Number of Simultaneous Printing Operations 9
- Printing Only Once at All Times 10

Useful Settings 11
- Setting Warning Displays According to the Amount of Remaining Ink 11
- Customizing the Display of the [**Settings**] and [**Queue Properties**] Tabs 12
- Configuring Hot Folder Settings for Summa GoSign 13

Other Settings 14
- Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use 14
- Increasing Memory 15
- Hiding the Queue Folder Identification in the Layout Window 16
- Preventing Update Notifications 17
- Checking the Link Settings with External Applications 18

Update 19
- Using the Latest Version of VersaWorks 19
- Performing Updates According to Their Details 21
- Checking the Version Information 24

Backing Up Data 25
- Saving VersaWorks Settings and Jobs for Later Use 25

Initialization 27
- Initializing VersaWorks 27

Outputting from Other Computers 30
- Outputting from the Client 30
- Outputting from Design Software 35
- Outputting Using a Hot Folder 37

Finding Jobs and Checking the Job Log 38
- Searching for Jobs 38
- Checking and Managing the Job Log Information 39

Efficiency Settings

Setting the Number of Simultaneous RIP Processing Operations

When multiple printers are registered in VersaWorks, you can set the number of RIP processing operations to perform simultaneously.

[**Max. # of concurrent RIP processes**] varies depending on the number of registered printers. If two printers are registered, you can select a value up to 2. If three printers are registered, you can select a value up to 3. If four to eight printers are registered, you can select a value up to 4.

For example, if there are three jobs that you want to perform RIP processing on, specifying 2 allows for simultaneous RIP processing on two of the three jobs. Then, when one RIP processing operation finishes, the RIP processing of the remaining jobs starts. However, when a large number is set, the amount of computer CPU usage and memory usage increase.

Procedure

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [RIP and Print].**
3. **Select the number of simultaneous RIP processes from [Max. # of concurrent RIP processes] under [RIP Speed Settings].**

   When there is one registered printer, the default value is 1. When there are two to eight registered printers, the default value is 2.
4. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.

Setting the Number of Simultaneous Printing Operations

When multiple printers are connected to VersaWorks, you can set the number of printing operations to perform simultaneously.

For example, configure this setting when you want to print simultaneously using multiple printers. When you are printing on two printers, specifying a value of 1 results in data being transmitted sequentially to one printer and then to the other. If a value of 2 is specified, data is transmitted to two printers simultaneously, and simultaneous printing begins. When a large number is set, the amount of computer CPU usage and memory usage increase.

Procedure

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [RIP and Print].**
3. **Select the number of simultaneous printing operations from [Max. # of Concurrent Outputs] under [Print Options].**

   The default value is 1.
4. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.

Printing Only Once at All Times

Print the specified job only once at all times without specifying the print count.

When this setting is used (turned off), printing will begin immediately when [Print] is clicked, eliminating the hassle of specifying the print count each time.

With the default value of on, a window for specifying the print count is displayed each time when [Print] is clicked. The print count can be specified for job groups and layered jobs.

Procedure

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [RIP and Print].**
3. **Clear the [Configure Advanced Print Settings] checkbox under [Print Options].**
   This checkbox is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.

Useful Settings

Setting Warning Displays According to the Amount of Remaining Ink

With the default settings, a warning is displayed at print start when the amount of ink remaining is low. However, depending on the print data, it may be possible to complete printing. You can configure the settings so that, by determining the amount of ink to use, this warning is not displayed during operation.

Procedure

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [RIP and Print].**
3. **Clear the [Show warning about ink shortage on print command] checkbox under [Print Options].**
   This checkbox is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.

Customizing the Display of the [Settings] and [Queue Properties] Tabs

You can show/hide or reorder the [**Settings**] and [**Queue Properties**] tabs ([**Layout**], [**Quality**], etc.) for each registered printer. The display can be customized, such as by reordering the tabs in order of the frequency of use, or hiding tabs that are not changed or used.

When set with [**Settings**] or with [**Queue Properties**], it is applied to all queue folders and jobs for that printer.

Procedure

1. **Select the printer to set, and then open the [Settings] or [Queue Properties] tab.**
   - [**Settings**]
     - Double-click the job.
     - Right-click a job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
   - [**Queue Properties**]: Click for the queue folder.

2. **Click [Customize].**

   The [**Tab Display Settings**] window appears.

3. **Follow the procedure below to customize the display of the printing setting tabs.**
   - **Hiding printing setting tabs**
     a. Select the target tab from the [**Tabs to Show and Their Order**] list, and then click >>.

        The target tab is moved to [**Tabs to Hide**].

     b. To return to [**Tabs to Show and Their Order**], select the target tab and click <<.

        The target tab is moved to the bottom of [**Tabs to Show and Their Order**].
   - **Changing the order of the printing setting tabs**

     Select the target tab from the [**Tabs to Show and Their Order**] list, and then click [**Move Up**] or [**Move Down**] to change the order.
   - **Hiding tab names**

     Unselect the [**Show Labels**] checkbox.

   MEMO

   Click [**Reset**] to restore tab display/hide and reordering to the defaults.

4. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the [**Settings**] or [**Queue Properties**] window.

5. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window.

Configuring Hot Folder Settings for Summa GoSign

Configure the settings so that Summa data is saved to the hot folder when the OPOS mark is output. Use Summa GoSign to set the way that the saved data is used.

Procedure

1. **Create a folder on the LAN network for the same computer on which VersaWorks has been installed.**
2. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
3. **Click [Linking].**
4. **Click ... under [Summa GoSign].**
   A window for selecting a folder appears.
5. **Specify the hot folder.**
   Select the folder you created in step 1.
6. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

Other Settings

Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use

When using a measurement instrument, set the type of measurement instrument to use for [**For Color Charts**], [**For Spot and Special Colors**], and [**For Printer Color Matching**] measurement.

Procedure

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [Measurement Instrument].**
3. **According to the application, select the measurement instrument to use from [Model] of the following items.**
   - [**For Color Charts**]
   - [**For Spot and Special Colors**]
   - [**For Printer Color Matching**][*1]
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.

*1 Select from [**Use [For Color Charts]**] or [**VW-S1**]. VW-S1 can be used with Windows only.

Increasing Memory

With a large quantity of image data, a memory shortage may occur, which may result in processing by the RIP and output becoming slow or impossible, or prevent print data from being added to the job list. In this case, increase the amount of memory.

Procedure

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [RIP and Print].**
3. **Adjust [Memory Amount].**
   Drag the slider or click its left and right sides to change the amount of memory.
   The default value is 1024 MB.
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.

Hiding the Queue Folder Identification in the Layout Window

Click , displayed in the top-right corner of the job layout area of the main window, to display previews of all the jobs in the queue folder on the selected printer.
With the initial settings, the queue folder name (A, B, C, ...) is displayed in the preview image so that you can tell which queue folder is being displayed in these preview images. It can be hidden in cases such as when a part of the preview image is covered, or when multiple queue folders are not used.

Procedure

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [General].**
3. **Clear the [Show Queue Identifier in Layout Window] checkbox under [Queue].**
   This checkbox is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.

Preventing Update Notifications

VersaWorks updates several times a year. Updates will be made to support new models, to add new features, media or color profiles, and to fix bugs. With the initial settings, the function for notifying the user of available updates when VersaWorks starts is enabled. However, if updates other than adding printers will not be performed, you can disable update notifications.

Procedure

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [Update].**
3. **Clear the [Check for Updates Automatically and Notify] checkbox under [Update Settings].**
   This checkbox is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.

Checking the Link Settings with External Applications

When the following application software links with VersaWorks, this setting must be on.

Turning this setting off will prevent the "Stop Connect Hub" message that is displayed when Connect Hub is not activated. As a result, functions added through Connect are disabled. Also, the message informing the user that additional features have been disabled will no longer be displayed.

- Connect Hub
- FlexiDESIGNER

Procedure

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [Linking].**
3. **Check that [Link with External Application] under [Linking] is on.**
   This checkbox is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.

Update

VersaWorks updates several times a year. Updates will be made to support new models, to add new features, media or color profiles, and to fix bugs. We recommend that you always update to the latest version of VersaWorks so that you can use the highly-functional VersaWorks.

VersaWorks is updated over an Internet connection. However, it may take some time to download and install the update file depending on your operating environment.

Select the update method below according to your VersaWorks use status. You can only update to the latest version available at the time of the update.

- Update to the latest version at all times.
  P. 19 Using the Latest Version of VersaWorks
- Check the contents of the update via automatic notification and decide whether to update or not update.
  P. 21 Checking the Details of Updates and Updating When an Automatic Notification Occurs
- Check the contents of the update at any time you want and decide whether to update or not update.
  P. 23 Checking the Details of Updates and Updating at the Desired Time

Using the Latest Version of VersaWorks

Use this section to configure the settings so a notification is provided when VersaWorks starts if a new version is available. When this notification (the [**Online Update**] window) is displayed, you can update to use the latest version of VersaWorks.

Procedure

Check settings

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Preferences].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [Update].**
3. **Select the [Check for Updates Automatically and Notify] checkbox under [Update Settings].**
   This checkbox is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.
5. **Exit VersaWorks.**

Update

6. **Start VersaWorks.**
   - If a new version is not available, no notification will appear. You are using the latest version.
   - If a new version is available, the [**Online Update**] window will appear with the details of the update. Carry out the following steps to update the software.

MEMO

In the [**Online Update**] window, you can also select one of the following options instead of [**Install Update**], which will immediately update the software to the latest version.

- [**Skip This Version**]
  Skips this update to the latest version. Notifications will not be displayed until the next time the latest version is released.
- [**Notify Me Later**]
  Closes the notification window and prevents notifications from being displayed for 24 hours. Thereafter, the notification will be displayed when VersaWorks is started.

7. **Click [Install Update].**

The [**Online Update**] window appears, and the required data is downloaded.

8. **When the message [Ready to install.] appears, click [Install Update.]**

VersaWorks is exited, and the introductory window of the installer appears. Follow the on-screen instructions to carry out the installation.

Performing Updates According to Their Details

You can perform updates according to their notified details. You can also manually check the details of and perform updates.

Checking the Details of Updates and Updating When an Automatic Notification Occurs

Updates are performed according to the contents of notifications. First, use this section to configure the settings so a notification is provided when VersaWorks starts if a new version is available. When this notification window appears, check the Update Details and determine whether to update.

Procedure

Check settings

1. **Display [Preferences] or [Settings].**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [Update].**
3. **Select the [Check for Updates Automatically and Notify] checkbox under [Update Settings].**
   This checkbox is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**] window closes.
5. **Exit VersaWorks.**

Check update

6. **Start VersaWorks.**
   - If a new version is not available, no notification will appear. You are using the latest version.
   - If a new version is available, the [**Online Update**] window will appear with the details of the update. To update the software, carry out the following steps.

   MEMO

   In the [**Online Update**] window, you can also select one of the following options instead of [**Install Update**], which will immediately update the software to the latest version.
   - [**Skip This Version**]
     Skips this update to the latest version. Notifications will not be displayed until the next time the latest version is released.
   - [**Notify Me Later**]
     Closes the notification window and prevents notifications from being displayed for 24 hours. Thereafter, the notification will be displayed when VersaWorks is started.
7. **Click [Install Update].**
   The [**Online Update**] window appears, and the required data is downloaded.
8. **When the message [Ready to install.] appears, click [Install Update.]**

VersaWorks is exited, and the introductory window of the installer appears. Follow the on-screen instructions to carry out the installation.

Checking the Details of Updates and Updating at the Desired Time

If you configure the settings under Preventing Update Notifications(P. 17), you will not be notified of software updates. Check for updates at the desired time and update the software if necessary.

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Help]>[Check for Updates].**
   - If a new version is not available, a message indicating that you are using the latest version will appear.
   - If a new version is available, the [**Online Update**] window will appear with the details of the update. Carry out the following steps to update the software.

Performing updates

2. **Click [Install Update].**

   The [**Online Update**] window appears, and the required data is downloaded.

3. **When the message [Ready to install.] appears, click [Install Update.]**

   VersaWorks is exited, and the introductory window of the installer appears. Follow the on-screen instructions to carry out the installation.

Checking the Version Information

This section explains how to check the version of VersaWorks you are currently using.

Procedure

1. **Follow the procedure below and check the version information.**
   - Windows: From the menu bar, click [**Help**]>[**About VersaWorks...**].
   - Mac: Click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**About VersaWorks...**] on the menu bar.

   The [**About VersaWorks...**] window appears.
2. **Check the version.**
3. **Click [OK].**
   The [**About VersaWorks...**] window closes.

Backing Up Data

Saving VersaWorks Settings and Jobs for Later Use

Various VersaWorks settings can be reproduced on new computers from data backed up from the original computer when changing computers. The following data can be backed up.

- Preferences or settings
- Printer Status
- Jobs (Job information used in VersaWorks)
- Important data (user-defined spot colors, special colors, and media; printing settings files; color-matching data; nearest color finder; variable templates; workpiece information; etc.)

MEMO

- Print data (PDF files, EPS files) should be backed up separately.
- Backup data cannot be imported if the VersaWorks version is older than the version used to create the backup data.

Saving Backup Data

Save the VersaWorks settings and job backup data.

Procedure

1. **In an arbitrary location, create a folder where the backup data should be stored.**
   Make sure the folder is empty.
2. **Exit VersaWorks.**
3. **Start VersaWorks [VW7 Data Management].**
   - **Windows 11 (version: 25H2)**
     Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**VW7 Data Management**].
   - **Mac (macOS 15.2)**
     Click [**Finder**] under [**Dock**], then click [**Applications**]>[**VW7 Data Management**].

   The [**VersaInit**] window appears.
4. **Click [Back Up].**
5. **Click [...], and then specify the folder created in Step 1.**
   When you specify the folder, you are returned to the [**VersaInit**] window.
6. **Click [Back Up].**
7. **In the backup confirmation window, click [Yes].**
   The backup data will be saved in the specified folder.
8. **When a completion message appears, click [OK].**
9. **Click [Close].**
   The [**VersaInit**] window closes.

Loading Backup Data

Load saved backup data.

Procedure

1. **Exit VersaWorks.**
2. **Start VersaWorks [VW7 Data Management].**
   - **Windows 11 (version: 25H2)**
     Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**VW7 Data Management**].
   - **Mac (macOS 15.2)**
     Click [**Finder**] under [**Dock**], then click [**Applications**]>[**VW7 Data Management**].

   The [**VersaInit**] window appears.
3. **Click [Restore].**
4. **Click [...], and then specify the folder in which the backup data was saved.**
   When you specify the folder, you are returned to the [**VersaInit**] window.
5. **Click [Restore].**
6. **In the restore confirmation window, click [Yes].**
   The backup data will be loaded.
7. **When a completion message appears, click [OK].**
8. **Click [Close].**
   The [**VersaInit**] window closes.

Initialization

Initializing VersaWorks

VersaWorks may fail to start correctly if data corruption occurs. It may also freeze while configuring jobs settings, etc. In such cases, recovery may be possible from [**VW7 Data Management**].

First, delete the jobs and printing settings. If VersaWorks is not restored, initialize all settings, excluding important data. If VersaWorks still cannot be restored, delete the operation data (important data) from before startup failed.

Step 1: Initializing the Job and Print Properties

Procedure

1. **Exit VersaWorks.**
2. **Start VersaWorks [VW7 Data Management].**
   - **Windows 11 (version: 25H2)**
     Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**VW7 Data Management**].
   - **Mac (macOS 15.2)**
     Click [**Finder**] under [**Dock**], then click [**Applications**]>[**VW7 Data Management**].

   The [**VersaInit**] window appears.
3. **Click [Initialize].**
   The initialization window appears.
4. **Select [Job and Print Properties], and then click [Initialize].**
5. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**
   The job and print properties are initialized.
6. **Click [OK].**
7. **Click [Close].**
   The [**VersaInit**] window closes.
8. **Start VersaWorks.**
   The operation is completed if VersaWorks is started successfully.

If VersaWorks still cannot be started, proceed to the next step.

Step 2: Initializing All VersaWorks Settings

Procedure

1. **Exit VersaWorks.**
2. **Start VersaWorks [VW7 Data Management].**
   - **Windows 11 (version: 25H2)**
     Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**VW7 Data Management**].
   - **Mac (macOS 15.2)**
     Click [**Finder**] under [**Dock**], then click [**Applications**]>[**VW7 Data Management**].

   The [**VersaInit**] window appears.
3. **Click [Initialize].**
   The initialization window appears.
4. **Select [All (Exclude Important Data)], and then click [Initialize].**
5. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**
   Excluding the important data, all data is initialized.
6. **Click [OK].**
7. **Click [Close].**
   The [**VersaInit**] window closes.
8. **Start VersaWorks.**
   The operation is completed if VersaWorks is started successfully.

If VersaWorks still cannot be started, proceed to the next step.

Step 3: Deleting Operation Data from before Startup Failed

This section explains how you can select and delete all operation data from before VersaWorks failed to start.

Procedure

1. **Exit VersaWorks.**
2. **Start VersaWorks [VW7 Data Management].**
   - **Windows 11 (version: 25H2)**
     Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks 7**]>[**VW7 Data Management**].
   - **Mac (macOS 15.2)**
     Click [**Finder**] under [**Dock**], then click [**Applications**]>[**VW7 Data Management**].

   The [**VersaInit**] window appears.
3. **Click [Initialize].**
   The initialization window appears.
4. **Click [Detailed Mode].**
   The detailed settings window appears. Click [**Simple Mode**] to return to the original window.
5. **Turn on the operation from before startup failed.**
   Example:
   - Select [**Custom Spot Color**] if a [**Spot Color**] was added.
   - Select [**Printing Settings File**] if a [**Printing Settings File**] was changed.
6. **Click [Initialize].**
7. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**
   The selected operation data is deleted.
8. **Click [OK].**
9. **Click [Close].**
   The [**VersaInit**] window closes.
10. **Start VersaWorks.**
    The operation is completed if VersaWorks is started successfully.

If VersaWorks still does not function normally, uninstall and reinstall it.

RELATED LINKS

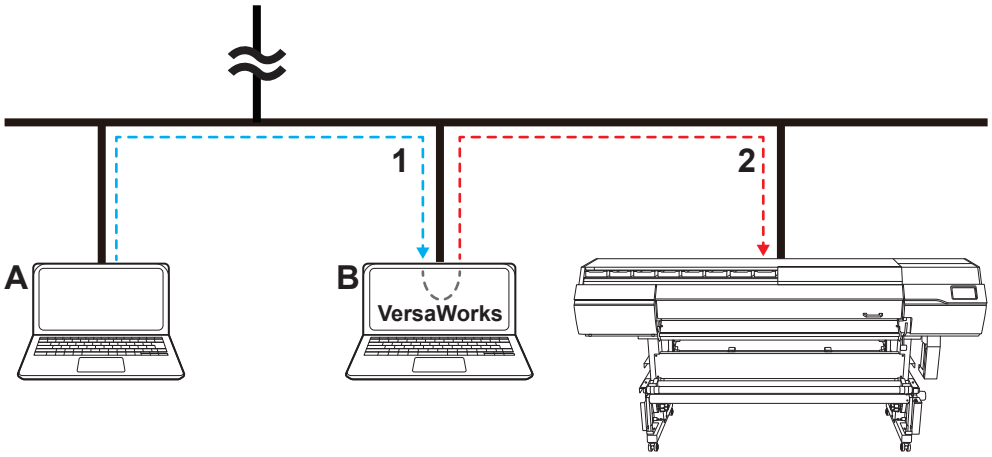
- Installation Guide, Uninstall

Outputting from Other Computers

When two or more computers are connected to the network, you can output from another computer (A) on which the print data was created or edited via a computer (B) on which VersaWorks is installed.

In this situation, the computer on which VersaWorks is installed is called the "RIP server," and other computers are called "clients."

Transmit the print data created on a client to the RIP server (1). Although an image file transmitted from a client is sent to the printer via the RIP server (2), the RIP server works as a printer when viewed from a client.



A	Client	1	Print data
B	RIP server (Windows only)	2	Job (RIP data)

This section explains the operations for taking the print data created on a client and printing it via the RIP server.

Outputting from the Client

Print from the client via the RIP server (the computer on which VersaWorks is installed: Windows only).

First, check the following items:

- The printer and the computers (RIP server and client) are connected correctly and are all switched on.
- The printer is set on the RIP server (the printer is registered in VersaWorks).
- The printer is ready to print (media has been set up).
- The client is a Mac OS X (10.5 or later) machine.

1. Preparing the RIP Server

Use the [**Queue Properties**] window to set the way to process the print data received from clients.

Procedure

1. **Click for Queue A.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click [Job Management] and then use [Action] under [Action for Incoming Jobs] to set the way to process the jobs added to the RIP server.**

- [**Do Nothing**]: Neither processing by the RIP nor printing is performed when a job is added to the job list.
- [**RIP Only**]: Only processing by the RIP is automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.
- [**RIP and Print**]: Both processing by the RIP and printing are automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.

3. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window.

Configure the client according to the OS.

2. Configure the Client Settings (Windows 11)

Configure the output settings on the client computer. The following operation procedure uses version 24H2 of Windows 11. The procedure may vary depending on the OS build, even with the same version.

Procedure

1. **Make sure the RIP server is running, and then log on to the client computer.**
2. **Open [Control Panel].**
   Search for [**Control Panel**] from the taskbar.
3. **Click [Devices and Printers].**
   The [**Bluetooth & devices**] window appears.
4. **Click [Printers & scanners].**
5. **Click [Add device].**
6. **Click [Add a new device manually] under [The printer that I want isn't listed].**
7. **Select [Select a shared printer by name].**
8. **Click [Browse...], input the device name of the RIP server, and press the ENTER key.**
9. **Select [VersaWorks7_(the nickname of the printer you want to output to)], and then click [Select].**
10. **Click [Next].**
    When a window prompting you to install the driver appears, do so.
11. **When a window indicating that the target printer has been added appears, click [Next].**
12. **Print a test page if necessary, and then click [Finish].**

2. Configuring the Client Settings (Mac)

The following operation procedure uses macOS 15.2. The OS that can be used as the client is macOS 10.13 or later.

Procedure

1. Access the following website.
   https://downloadcenter.rolanddg.com/VersaWorks7#software
2. Click [VersaWorks 7].
3. Click [macOS10.13-].
4. Download VersaWorksPPD10.13-.zip to the client computer and extract the files according to the on-screen instructions.
5. Save the extracted file VersaWorks10.13-.PPD to the desired location.
6. Click the Apple menu on the menu bar, and then click [System Settings...].
7. Click [Printers & Scanners].
8. Click [Add a Printer, Scanner or Fax...].
9. Click  [Windows]. A list appears below this item. Select the network group that the computer belongs to from the list.
10. Select the name of the RIP server's computer from the list.
11. When the window for trying connection appears, click [Connect].
12. If you are prompted for a username and password, enter the username and password for the RIP server, and then click [Connect].
13. Select [VersaWorks7_(the nickname of the printer you want to output to)] from the list.
14. From the [Use] list, select [Other...].
15. Select the PPD file that you saved in Step 5, and then click [Open].

    MEMO

    If you cannot select the PPD file, display the preview with [**Quick Look**]. You will then be able to click [**Open**].
16. Click [Add].
    The selected printer is added to [**Printers**].

3. Output the Job

Output print data from the design software that is used on the client side.

Select [**VersaWorks7_(the nickname of the printer you want to output to)**] as the printer. Operations vary depending on the design software.

RELATED LINKS

- P. 35 Outputting from Design Software

Outputting from Design Software

Perform output directly from your design software.

This section explains the methods for outputting from Adobe Illustrator and CorelDRAW. The output procedure is the same regardless of whether the client computer or the RIP server computer is used.

First, check the following items:

- The printer and the computers are connected correctly and are all switched on.
- The printer is ready to print (media has been set up).

MEMO

The actual operation procedure varies depending on the OS and the version of this software.

Adobe Illustrator

It is possible to directly add print data to the job list from the Adobe Illustrator you are using. The printing procedure is the same whether the client and RIP server are the same computer or different computers. The following is the operation procedure with Windows 11 (24H2) and Adobe Illustrator v29.2.

Procedure

1. **Start Adobe Illustrator and create print data.**
2. **Click [File]>[Print] from the menu bar.**
3. **In [Printer], select [VersaWorks (the nickname of the printer you want to output to)].**
4. **Set the number of copies and paper size as necessary.**
5. **Click [Print].**
   The job is sent to Queue A of the printer that was selected in Step 3.
6. **Configure the necessary settings on the VersaWorks (RIP server) side and print.**

CorelDRAW

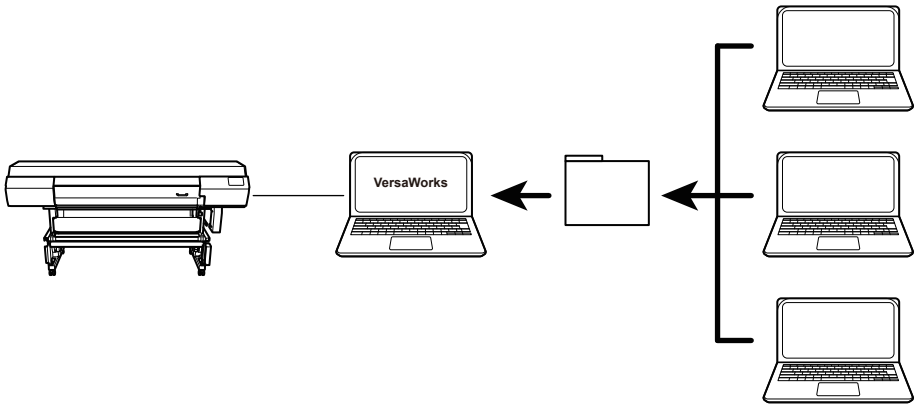
It is possible to directly add print data to the job list from the CorelDRAW you are using. The printing procedure is the same whether the client and RIP server are the same computer or different computers. The following is the operating procedure for macOS 15.2 and CorelDRAW v25.2.

Procedure

1. **Start CorelDRAW and create print data.**
2. **Click [File]>[Print] from the menu bar.**
3. **In [Printer], select [VersaWorks (the nickname of the printer you want to output to)].**
4. **As necessary configure the number of copies and direction.**
5. **Click [Print].**
   The job is sent to Queue A of the printer that was selected in Step 3.
6. **Configure the necessary settings on the VersaWorks (RIP server) side and print.**

Outputting Using a Hot Folder

This section explains how to set the transfer of print data saved in a specified folder to the VersaWorks queue folder. Configuring this setting when print data is created on a computer that does not have VersaWorks installed, or when there are multiple print data creators, allows print data to be easily loaded into VersaWorks.



With this setting configured, you can create nested jobs in the queue folder and you can configure RIP and printing settings to allow for automation.

IMPORTANT

Print data saved in a hot folder will be deleted from the hot folder after transfer, so the source data should be saved separately.

Configuring Settings Using a Hot Folder

Procedure

1. **Create a folder on the LAN network for the same computer on which VersaWorks has been installed.**
2. **Click**  **for the queue folder to configure settings.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.
3. **Click**  **[Job Management].**
4. **Click ... under [Hot Folder].**

   A window for selecting a folder appears.
5. **Specify the hot folder.**

   Select the folder you created in Step 1.
6. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window.

Finding Jobs and Checking the Job Log

Searching for Jobs

You can list all the jobs and search for them in VersaWorks.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to display the [Find Job] window.**

   - Click  in the job tool area.
   - From the menu bar, click [**File**]>[**Find Job**].

   The [**Find Job**] window opens with all jobs displayed. With a job selected, click [**OK**] to close the [**Find Job**] window. The job list printer and the corresponding job are also selected in the main window.

   MEMO

   Click [**Nickname**], [**Queue**], [**Job Name**], or[**Input Time**] in the table title to sort the list items in ascending or descending order.

Searching for a job

2. **Enter the [Find What].**

   To delete the entered search, click [**Clear**].

3. **Click [Search].**

   Job names that include the entered character string are displayed.

   MEMO

   Click [**Nickname**], [**Queue**], [**Job Name**], or[**Input Time**] in the table title to sort the list items in ascending or descending order.

4. **Select the job.**

   With a job selected, click [**OK**] to close the [**Find Job**] window. The job list printer and the corresponding job are also selected in the main window.

Checking and Managing the Job Log Information

You can view the information about jobs processed in VersaWorks, such as their contents and the date and time when they were processed, in the [**Job Log**] window. Jobs can be sorted, filtered, and deleted in this window. Detailed information about the log of each job can also be checked.

You can save the log information to a CSV file or as XML file format. You can open the saved data with spreadsheet software or other software, and use it to check ink consumption and print time.

Viewing the Job Log Information

Display the [**Job Log**] window.

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [View]>[Job Log].**

The [**Job Log**] window appears. This window includes the following information.

[**No.**]	Order in which the print data was added
[**Event**]	Type of process that is being performed or that has been completed
[**Nick Name**]	Printer model name or the nickname
[**Job Name**]	Print data name
[**Size**]	Print data size
[**Print Area**]	Size of the printed width and height
[**Ink Consumption**]	Amount of ink used to print*1
[**Start Time**]	Date and time that the process shown in [**Event**] was started
[**End Time**]	Date and time that the process shown in [**Event**] finished
[**Details**]	Information such as the error category and cause (if an error occurs during the processing of the job)

*1 Displayed when processing by the RIP is performed.

MEMO

- In the [**Job Log**] window, click a column title in the table such as [**Event**], [**Nick Name**], or [**Job Name**] to sort that item in ascending or descending order.
- Saving the Job Log Information(P. 41)The above is available.

2. **To filter [Job Log], click .**

The [**Filter Conditions**] window appears. You can filter on the following items.

- [**Date**]
- [**Nick Name**]
- [**Job Name**]
- [**Setting**]
- [**Processing Result**]

3. **Click [OK].**

Jobs appear according to the filtering conditions.

4. **To view more detailed information about a job, double-click the job's log entry or select the job's log entry and click .**

The [**Detailed Job Log**] appears.

[**Event**]	Type of process that is being performed or that has been completed
[**Nick Name**]	Printer model name or the nickname
[**Job Name**]	Print data name
[**Size**]	Print data size
[**Page Size**]	Size of the page
[**Media Name**]	Media Type
[**Copy**]	Number of copies printed*2
[**Print Area**]	Size of the printed width and height
[**Input Time**]	Date and time when the print data was registered in the queue folder*3
[**RIP Start Time**]	Date and time when processing by the RIP started
[**RIP End Time**]	Date and time when processing by the RIP finished
[**Print Start Time**]	Date and time when printing started
[**Print End Time**]	Date and time when printing finished
[**Setting**]	Name of the folder where the job is registered
[**Ink Consumption**]	Total amount of ink consumed in printing and amount of ink consumed for each color
[**Details**]	Information such as the error category and cause (if an error occurs during the processing of the job)

*2 If not printed, the specified number of copies printed.

*3 Deleted when processing by the RIP or printing is performed.

5. **Close the [Detailed Job Log] window.**

6. **Close the [Job Log] window.**

Saving the Job Log Information

Save the information in the [**Detailed Job Log**] window.

Procedure

1. **Select the log entry to save in the [Job Log] window.**
   You can select multiple log entries. The operation method depends on the OS.
2. **Click**  **.**
   The [**Save As**] window appears.
3. **Enter the desired name.**
   The saved file format is CSV (comma-delimited) or XML. The method of selecting the file format varies depending on the OS.
   - Windows: Select a saved file format from the File Type list.
   - Mac: The selected file format is included in the file name.
4. **Save.**
   The file is saved to the location that you specified.
5. **Close the [Job Log] window.**

Deleting the Job Log Information

Deletes the [**Job Log**].

Procedure

1. **Select the log entry to delete in the [Job Log] window.**
   You can select multiple log entries. The operation method depends on the OS.
2. **Click**  **.**
   The delete confirmation window appears.
3. **Click [Yes].**
   The selected job is deleted.
4. **Close the [Job Log] window.**

Job and Queue Folder Settings

Layout Settings 44
- Setting the Size of the Material 44
- Zooming In / Zooming Out 45
- Setting the Printing Position 46
- Setting the Number of Copies to Print 47
- Setting the Spacing from the Adjacent Image 48
- Mirroring the Image 50
- Rotating the Image 51
- Adjusting the Printing Position in the Layout Area 52
- Changing the Ratio of the Image Width to Height 54
- Printing with the Same Top-Bottom Orientation as the Print Data 55

Printer Control Settings 56
- Cutting the Media after Output 56
- Setting the Space to the Next Printing Start Location 58
- Determining How to Alleviate Horizontal Bands: [**Feed Calibration Controls**] 59
- Using Media That Wrinkles Easily/Does Not Move Smoothly: [**Vacuum Power**] 60
- Setting the Drying Time after Printing 61
- Adjusting Print Head Height to Match Media Thickness 62
- Setting the Heater/Dryer Temperature 63
- Reducing the UV Lamp Irradiation Intensity 64
- Correcting the Dimensions in the Printing Results 65
- Performing Only UV Lamp Irradiation 66
- Adding Jobs That Perform Only UV Lamp Irradiation after Printing 67
- Limiting Print Heads Used for Printing: [**Nozzle Mask**] 68

Print Quality Settings 69
- Setting the Halftone 69
- Selecting the Interpolation Used for Scaling 70
- Setting the Direction of the Print Head 71
- Setting the Print Head Speed 72
- Setting the Optimizer Ink Amount 73

Efficiency Settings 74
- Reducing the Amount of Media Used 74
- Automating Processing by the RIP and Printing 77
- Printing while Processing by the RIP 79
- Outputting Multiple Jobs at Once 80
- Adding a Name to a Queue Folder 81

Reuse Settings 82
- Saving and Reusing Printed Jobs 82
- Reusing Queue Folder Settings 89
- Reusing Job Settings 93

Layout Settings

This section explains how to arrange jobs on the media. In some cases, the control setting is set in the queue folder, and in other cases, it is set in each job. Set the control setting as appropriate for your situation.

Setting the Size of the Material

This section explains how to set the size of the media to be used on the queue folder.

Procedure

1. **Click  for the queue folder to configure settings.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click  [Layout].**

3. **When media is set up on the printer side, click [Get Media Width] in [Media Settings].**

   VersaWorks obtains the information about the width of the printable area from the printer, and [**W**] is set. [**W**] and [**H**] are set for the flat-bed model.

4. **When media is set up on the printer side, follow the procedure below and set the media size.**

   (1) **From the [Size] list, select [CustomROLL] or [CustomCUT].**

   (2) **Set the [W].**

   [**CustomCUT**] and [**H**] can be set when [**W**] is selected.

5. **Click [OK].**

   When a message indicating that the printing settings were changed appears, click [**OK**]. The [**Queue Properties**] window closes.

   MEMO

   These settings can also be customized per job using the [**Settings**] window.

Zooming In / Zooming Out

This section explains how to configure the settings in order to enlarge or reduce jobs, not queue folders, for printing. Because the [**W**] and [**H**] of the [**Scaling**] differ in their respective print data, they cannot be changed in [**Queue Properties**].

The horizontal to vertical ratio also cannot be changed.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

2. **Click [Layout].**

3. **Select the scaling method from [Scaling].**
   - [**Scale**]

     Enlarges or reduces the job by the specified scaling factor.
   - [**W**] or [**H**]

     Enlarges or reduces the job to the specified size. Entering one value will automatically set the other one.
   - [**Fit to Media Size**]

     Select this checkbox to automatically enlarge or reduce the job to match the paper size set in [**Media Settings**]. The scaling factor changes depending on the job orientation specified with [**Orientation**] under [**Print Properties**].

4. **Click [OK].**

   The changes will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.

Setting the Printing Position

Even when the printing position that was set for the printer is not changed, the printing position can be changed in the horizontal and vertical directions with VersaWorks. This setting can be made on the job or on the queue folder.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] screen appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Layout].**
3. **Under [Position], perform one of the following operations:**
   - Enter the values in [**X**] and [**Y**].

     The job is moved by the specified offset in relation to the job list layout area window's upper left corner (lower right of set up media). [X] sets the right distance and [Y] sets the downward distance. The actual printing will be output rotated 180°, so horizontal movement will be to the left and vertical movement will be to the top.
   - Select the [**Center on the Media**] checkbox.

     When using roll media, the job is moved to the horizontal center of the media. When using sheet media or standard-size media, the job is moved to the horizontal and vertical center of the media.

   MEMO

   When changes are made in [**Settings**], you can check the changed position in the layout area.
4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**]. The changes are reflected in the layout area of the main window.

   MEMO

   If, after printing, you are performing laminating followed by cutting (block & cut), clear the [**Center on the Media**] checkbox. If the [**Center on the Media**] checkbox is selected, the cutting position may be misaligned.

Setting the Number of Copies to Print

Sets the number of copies to print. This setting can be made on the job or on the queue folder.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Layout].**
3. **Enter the number of copies to print in [Copy] under [Print Properties].**
4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**]. The changes are reflected in the layout area of the main window.

Setting the Spacing from the Adjacent Image

When printing multiple images adjacent to one another, set the spacing between one image and the neighboring image.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click ⚙ for the queue folder.

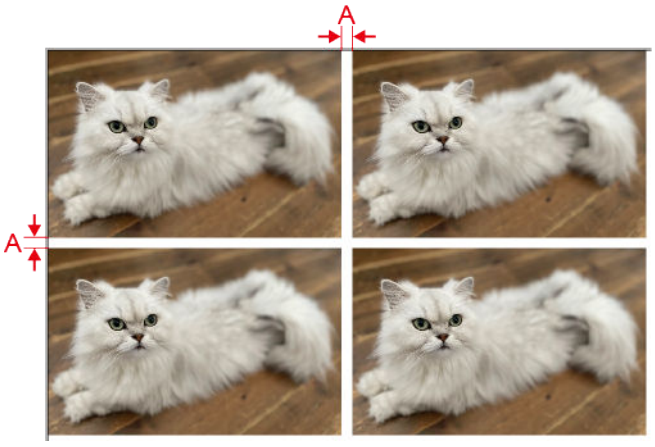
     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click ▦ [Layout].**
3. **Specify the values for [Tile Spacing] and [Spacing] with [Print Properties].**

   MEMO

   The items that can be selected vary depending on the printer.

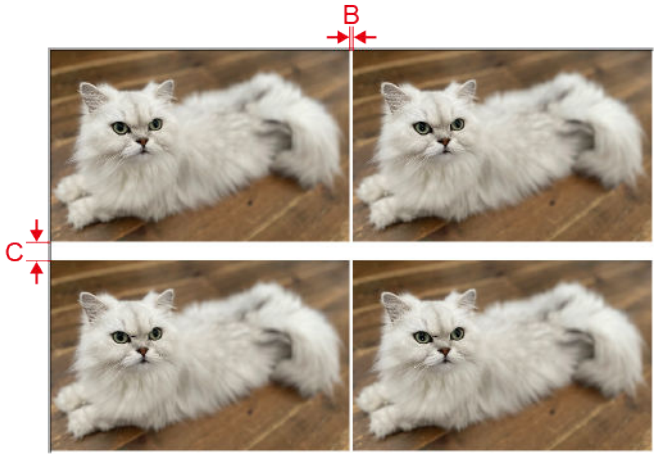
   - **[Equal X and Y Spacing]**

     Specifies the [**Spacing**] from the adjacent image. The same vertical and horizontal [**Spacing**] (A) can be specified.

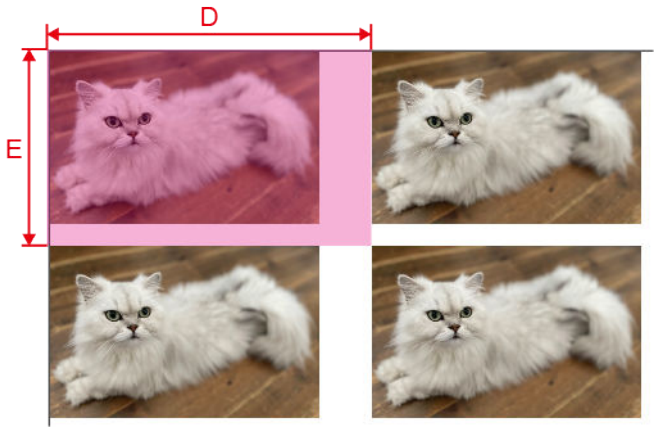
   - **[Separate X and Y Spacing]**

     Specifies the spacing from the adjacent image. Separate values can be specified for [**X**] (B) and [**Y**] (C).



- **[Grid Spacing]**

  Specify the value of the image size plus the spacing from the adjacent image. Specify values separately for **[W]** (D) and **[H]** (E).



4. **Click [OK].**

- Any changes made in **[Settings]** will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
- When changes are made in **[Queue Properties]**:
  - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click **[OK]**.
  - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click **[Copy/Paste Setting Value]**>**[Apply Current Queue Settings]**. The changes are reflected in the layout area of the main window.

Mirroring the Image

This section explains how to configure settings when mirroring an image in order to print for transfers and when printing on transparent media when the image will be viewed from the opposite side of the printed surface.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Layout].**
3. **Select the [Mirror] checkbox under [Print Properties].**
4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**]. The changes are reflected in the layout area of the main window.

Rotating the Image

Rotate the image in 90° units. By printing a portrait image sideways, it is possible to reduce media use. However rotation is not possible in directions where the image exceeds the media size.

Because the size here varies depending on the print data, configure this for the job.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click **[Settings]**.

2. **Click [Layout].**

3. **The direction for job printing can be selected from the following icons in [Orientation] under [Print Properties].**

   When you select an icon, its color changes to blue.

Icon	Direction
	Top
	Left
	Bottom
	Right

   MEMO

   It is not possible to change to horizontal orientation when **[Tile Spacing]** is **[Grid Spacing]**. Change [Tile Spacing] to **[Equal X and Y Spacing]** or **[Separate X and Y Spacing]**.

4. **Click [OK].**

   The changes will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.

Adjusting the Printing Position in the Layout Area

This section explains how to set the printing position while checking it in the layout area in the **[Settings]** window. Use this function to rearrange nested jobs, to change the order of multiple print runs to cut the same number of prints, and similar situations.



Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click **[Settings]**.

2. **Click [Layout].**

3. **Click at the top of the layout area.**

   If the icon is blue, it is already selected.

4. **Click a preview image in the layout area to select it.**

   The selected image is highlighted with a light blue border (A).

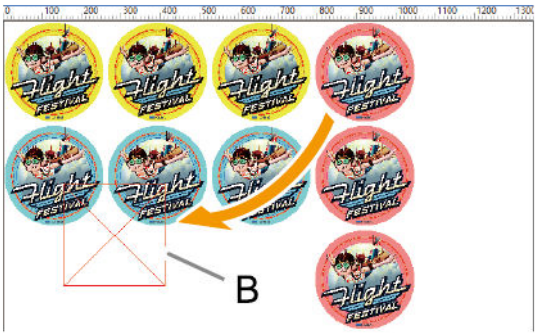


MEMO

Select multiple images by clicking the images while holding down the shift key or by dragging the mouse pointer over the images.

5. **Drag the selected image to a new location in order to set its printing position.**

   Images cannot overlap each other. If you drag an image onto another image, a red box (B) appears as shown in the figure.



6. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window. You can check the printing position in the layout area of the main window.

Changing the Ratio of the Image Width to Height

Change the ratio of the width to height of the print data.

When you open [**Settings**], this setting is set to on. You can change the size while maintaining the ratio of the width to height even if you perform [**Scaling**] or change the width or height value. If you change this setting, you can change just the width or just the height by itself. For example, if the width of the print data is slightly lacking in relation to the printing area, you can lengthen the print data in the width direction.

Note that you cannot configure this setting with [**Queue Properties**]. Configure it on the job.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
2. **Click [Layout].**
3. **Click under [Scaling].**

   The icon changes to .
4. **Change the value or [Scale].**

   The changes are reflected in the preview area of the [**Settings**].

   MEMO

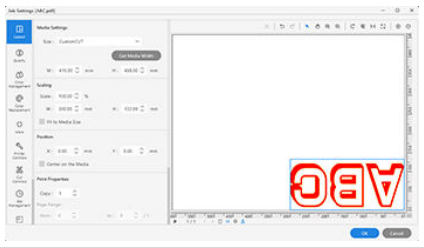
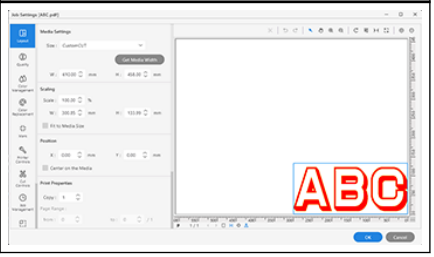
   After you change the width or height ratio, you can use one of the methods below to return it to its original state.
   - [**Reset ALL**]
     Returns to the original ratio and size.
   - [**Restore Original Ratio**]
     The window for selecting the reference appears, so select [**Width**] or [**Height**].
5. **Click [OK].**

   The changes will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.

Printing with the Same Top-Bottom Orientation as the Print Data

VersaWorks prints the data rotated 180 degrees in relation to the orientation of the print data. *1

However, with flat-bed models, you may want to place the object on the table according to the user view. By rotating the print data 180 degrees, you can print with the same user view as the print data.

Print data	[Rotate jobs to match the user view]: Cleared	[Rotate jobs to match the user view]: On
		

Configure this setting on the [**Queue**]. If you want to set the orientation for printing for each piece of print data, carry out the procedure under Rotating the Image(P. 51) in the [**Settings**].

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to configure settings.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click [Job Management].**

3. **Select the [Rotate jobs to match the user view] checkbox under [Action for Incoming Jobs].**

4. **Click [OK].**
   - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
   - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

5. **Add the print data to the job list.**

6. **Perform printing.**

*1 This does not apply to registered flat-bed models registered in Ver 7.7.0 or later.

Printer Control Settings

This section explains how to configure the control setting of your printer from VersaWorks. In some cases, the control setting is set in the queue folder, and in other cases, it is set in each job. Set the control setting as appropriate for your situation.

Generally, the VersaWorks settings are used if the settings differ between your printer and VersaWorks. However, depending on the model, its settings may be prioritized for certain functions, and the displayed functions may differ.

Cutting the Media after Output

This section explains how to cut away the media after printing. For separation after cutting with crop mark printing, set margins before separation.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.

- Job
  - Double-click the job to set.
  - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
  - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click **[Settings]**.

  The **[Settings]** window appears.
- Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

  The **[Queue Properties]** appears.

2. Click [Printer Controls].

3. Select the type of cut with [Cut Sheet after Output] under [General].

- **[Sheet Cutting]**
- **[Perforated Sheet Cutting]**
- **[Perforated Sheet Cutting (Leaving Both Edges)]**

> MEMO
>
> Depending on the model, you may not be able to select **[Perforated Sheet Cutting]** or **[Perforated Sheet Cutting (Leaving Both Edges)]**.

4. To set margins up to the cut position for cutting with crop marks or other cutting, specify the margin from [Page Space].

(1) **Select the [Use Custom Settings] checkbox.**

(2) **Set the margins from [Page Space].**

The margins necessary for cutting with crop marks vary depending on the model.

Reference value:

- VG2/SG2 series: 90 mm (3.5 in.)

- VG3/SG3 series: 140 mm (5.52 in.)
- BN2/BY series: 108 mm (4.26 in.)

For models other than the above, check the instruction manual for your printer.

5. **Click [OK].**

- Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
- When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
  - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
  - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Setting the Space to the Next Printing Start Location

This section explains how to set the margin between jobs when printing jobs consecutively on roll media. The margin default values are set in the printer.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Printer Controls].**
3. **Select the [Use Custom Settings] checkbox under [General].**
4. **Set the [Page Space].**
5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**]. The changes are reflected in the layout area of the main window.

Determining How to Alleviate Horizontal Bands: [Feed Calibration Controls]

This section explains how to configure the settings in order to use [**Feed Calibration Controls**] to alleviate the horizontal bands that occur during printing.

When feed calibration is performed on the printer side, and [**Use Printer Settings**] is set on the VersaWorks side, the printer-side feed calibration value is applied.

You can set the results from measurement of the feed calibration value at the printer with [**Use Custom Settings**]>[**Feed Calibration**] in VersaWorks.

MEMO

When using non-genuine media, you need to configure the feed calibration on the printer or in VersaWorks.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Printer Controls].**
3. **Use [Feed Calibration Controls] to select the control method.**

[**Use Default Media Settings**]	Printing is performed with the recommended values for the media selected with [**Media Type**] under [**Quality Settings**].
[**Use Custom Settings**]	Printing is performed with the values set in this window.
[**Use Printer Settings**]*1	Printing is performed with the settings configured on the printer.

*1 Default value

4. **If you select [Use Custom Settings], enter the [Feed Calibration].**
5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Using Media That Wrinkles Easily/Does Not Move Smoothly: [Vacuum Power]

Sets the intensity of the vacuum that holds the media flat on the platen. Increase the [**Vacuum Power**] when rigid media gets warped or lifts up after wrinkling and decrease it when using media soft and smooth media. In this way, you may be able to improve the feeding of the media. Additionally, there are also models on which it is possible to configure advanced settings for the suction fan from the printer side.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Printer Controls].**
3. **Select [Use Custom Settings] for [Other Controls].**
4. **Set the [Vacuum Power].**
5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Setting the Drying Time after Printing

You can set the time to dry out the media by setting the time (in minutes) to wait before printing the next page or cutting after a printing operation finishes.

For example, when you need the printed surface to be completely dry when performing printing and cutting (print & cut), it is effective to set a long drying time.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Printer Controls].**
3. **Select [Use Custom Settings] for [Other Controls].**
4. **Set the [Dry Time].**
5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Adjusting Print Head Height to Match Media Thickness

This section explains how to adjust the print head height to match the media thickness.

The height of the print head is set with [**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**]>[**Media Name**]. Changing this height may affect the printing quality. Normally do not change this setting.

However when printing on thick media and when swelling occurred due to drying after printing, the distance between the print heads and the print surface will be smaller than the intended value. Depending on the circumstances, the print head may contact the media. In order to avoid this, change the height of the print head. If the print head height on the printer and the setting are different, a message may be displayed on the printer. In this situation, make the settings the same.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Printer Controls].**
3. **Select [Use Custom Settings] for [Other Controls].**
4. **Set the [Head Height].**
5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].
6. **Set the head height to the same setting on the printer side.**

Setting the Heater/Dryer Temperature

Normally, the settings for the media-drying devices such as the printer's heater and dryer are configured from the printer. For this reason, [**Use Printer Settings**] is the default setting for [**Printer Controls**]>[**Heater Controls**]. In addition, [**Ignore Default Settings**] may be the default option depending on the model.

However, you can set the temperature of the heater and dryer while configuring the various settings in VersaWorks.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click  [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click  for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click  [Printer Controls].**
3. **Select [Use Custom Settings] for [Heater Controls].**

   The checkboxes will be selected, and you can set the temperatures of the devices. Clear the checkboxes to turn off the devices. Depending on the model you are using, some setting items may not be displayed.
   - [**Pre Heater**]
   - [**Print Heater**]
   - [**Dryer**]
4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Reducing the UV Lamp Irradiation Intensity

Depending on the media, the standard irradiation intensity may be too strong, affecting the printing quality. Additionally, there are printing methods where it is desirable to not cure the ink, allowing for decoration. This section explains how to configure the settings to reduce the irradiation intensity of the UV lamp in these situations.

If you change [**Media Name**], [**Print Quality**], [**Resolution**], or [**Mode**] after configuring settings, set the irradiation intensity again.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click  [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click  for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click  [Printer Controls].**
3. **Select the [Change UV Lamp Irradiation Intensity] checkbox under [UV Lamp Control].**
4. **When a window warning you about changing the irradiation intensity appears, click [OK].**
5. **Set the [Irradiation Intensity].**
6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Correcting the Dimensions in the Printing Results

Print data and printing size may change due to factors such as thermal expansion of the media after printing. In this case, you can correct a shifted printing result by correcting the horizontal and vertical sizes of the job dimensions.

If you enter the measured sizes (the actual print size) and the expected sizes (the size to be printed), the correction factors can be automatically calculated and easily set. You can also enter the correction factors directly.

For print data with cutting lines, the print dimensions can be corrected, but the cutting line dimensions cannot be corrected.

Procedure

1. **Measure the size of the printed output.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

3. **Click [Printer Controls].**

4. **Click [Correction Calculator] under [Print Size Correction].**
   The [**Correction Calculator**] window appears.

5. **In [Expected Size] and [Measured Size], enter the sizes in the horizontal and vertical directions.**
   - [**Expected Size**]: Enter the size to be printed.
   - [**Measured Size**]: Enter the measured size of the printing result.

   The input value is calculated automatically and displayed in [**Correction Factor**]. However, the correction factors can be set within a range of −5.00% to +5.00%.

6. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Correction Calculator**] window closes. Verify that the correction factor is reflected in the horizontal and vertical values.

7. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

MEMO

- You can also enter the correction factors directly.
- You can also configure the same setting in the [**Queue Properties**] window. After setting, to apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click on the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Performing Only UV Lamp Irradiation

Depending on the media and the print data, the ink may not be fully cured just by the UV irradiation during printing. Therefore use this procedure to fully cure ink to its center and as post-processing to special printing in which the ink is not fully cured.

Follow the procedure below and configure the settings so that only the same UV irradiation as during printing is performed after printing.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
2. **Click [Printer Controls].**
3. **Select [UV Post Cure Only] for [Operation Mode] under [UV Lamp Control].**
4. **As necessary, use [Scan Speed] to set the print head movement speed.**
5. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window. The icon is added to the job name field in the job list.
6. **Perform printing.**

   Only UV lamp irradiation is performed.

Adding Jobs That Perform Only UV Lamp Irradiation after Printing

This section explains how to duplicate a job to add a job that performs only UV lamp irradiation. This procedure is useful in situations such as when you want to retain a job to print as a separate job. Adding a job where only UV lamp irradiation is performed after printing will efficiently allow additional UV irradiation.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. Use one of the methods below to create a [UV Post Cure Job].

- Right-click the job to duplicate, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**UV Post Cure Job**].
- With the job to duplicate selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click  [**UV Post Cure Job**].

The job is duplicated, and the duplicate job performs only UV irradiation. The  icon is added to the job name field.

If there are multiple jobs in the job list, the duplicate job is added at the bottom of the list.

MEMO

If you want to perform only UV irradiation after printing, group the jobs before outputting them.

P. 80 Outputting Multiple Jobs at Once

2. If necessary, change the job name.

(1) **Right-click the job to copy and click [Edit Design]>[Rename].**

(2) **Change the name in the [Rename] window.**

(3) **Click [OK].**

The [**Rename**] window closes.

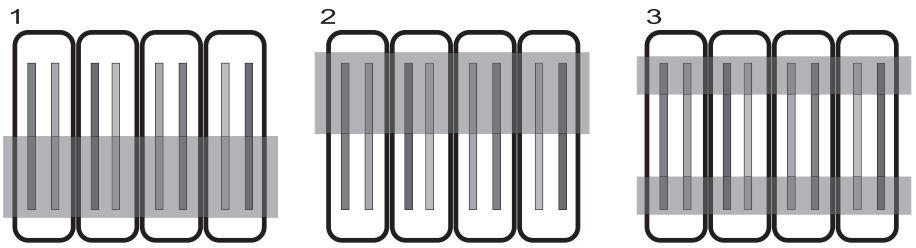
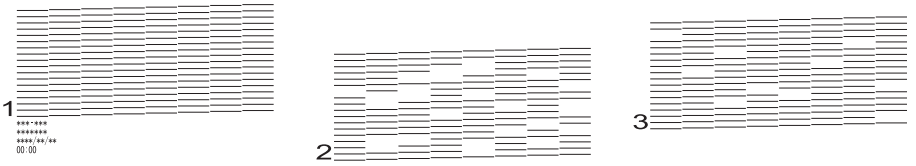
Limiting Print Heads Used for Printing: [Nozzle Mask]

When discharge issues on the printer such as dot drop-out and dot displacement are not improved, partially restrict the print heads (nozzles) from being used for printing (i.e. prevent the use of the print heads that are causing discharge issues). This operation is called the "nozzle mask," and while it slows down printing speed, it also allows you to decrease the impact of dot drop-out or dot displacement. This is an emergency measure that should be used when you have to prioritize order delivery.

First, use the printer's menu to perform a printing test for the nozzle mask. With this printing test, a test pattern is printed for each nozzle group. The number of groups varies depending on the printer.

The top row of the following table shows the nozzles to mask, and the bottom row shows test patterns. From the left, the case where the lower half of the nozzles is masked (1), the case where the upper half of the nozzles is masked (2), and the case where the upper and lower 1/4 of the nozzles are masked (3) are shown.

Example of nozzle masking

Nozzles to mask*1	
Nozzle mask test pattern	

*1 The gray parts in the figure show the print head parts that are not used (masked).

According to the printing test result, print with the nozzle group—(1), (2), or (3)—that has the least discharge issues.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform a printing test for the nozzle mask.**

   For details on how to perform printing tests, refer to the instruction manual for your printer.

2. **Click [Home].**

3. **Click to the right of the target printer, and then click [Change Nozzle Mask].**

4. **Select the nozzle group to use in printing from the printing-test results.**

5. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Change Nozzle Mask**] window closes. is added to the status icon of the set printer.

When printing for which delivery is prioritized is finished, take action to correct the discharge defects.

Print Quality Settings

Setting the Halftone

The following two RIP processing methods are available.

- [**Dither**]: A screening method that uses a specific dithering pattern to yield fast processing by the RIP. It results in comparatively stable colors.
- [**Error Diffusion**]: The finishing of finer details such as the granulation and the thin line image quality improves, but the time required for processing by the RIP is longer than when [Dither] is used. Rarely, this method may result in strange colors.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Quality].**
3. **Select the media to use in printing from [Media Name] under [Quality Settings].**
4. **Use [Print Quality] to select the printing quality.**

   If [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] are selectable, select those as well.

   The available parameters for [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] vary depending on the media setting in the [**Media Explorer**] window.
5. **Click ▸ next to [Details].**
6. **Select [Dither] or [Error Diffusion] from [Halftone].**

   [**Halftone Options**] is only enabled when the [**Angled Screen**] setting is included in the mode to use for printing.
7. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Selecting the Interpolation Used for Scaling

The following three interpolation methods are available when scaling the image.

- [**Nearest Neighbor**]: The image easily becomes coarse when it is zoomed in on and blurry when it is zoomed out from, but the processing speed is high. The accuracy is lowest.
- [**Bi-Linear**]: Standard quality and processing speed.
- [**Bi-Cubic**]: Lowest image degradation during scaling but low processing speed.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click ⚙ for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Quality].**
3. **Select the media to use in printing from [Media Name] under [Quality Settings].**
4. **Use [Print Quality] to select the printing quality.**

   If [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] are selectable, select those as well.

   The available parameters for [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] vary depending on the media setting in the [**Media Explorer**] window.
5. **Click ▸ next to [Details].**
6. **Select the interpolation to use for the job scaling ([Nearest Neighbor], [Bi-Linear], or [Bi-Cubic]) from [Interpolation].**
7. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Setting the Direction of the Print Head

You can configure one of the following two settings with [**Direction**] on models whose print head can print in the outbound and return passes.

- [**Bi-Direction**]: When the print head moves, printing will be performed in both the outbound pass and return pass. The printing time is shorter than [**Uni-Direction**], but printing is affected by the thickness of the media, so you have to adjust the misalignment of the ink landing position on the machine.
- [**Uni-Direction**]: Printing will only be performed in the outbound pass (depending on the model, printing may only be performed in the return pass). The printing time is longer but the quality is higher. With this setting, there is no need to make adjustments on the machine.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Quality].**
3. **Select the media to use in printing from [Media Name] under [Quality Settings].**
4. **Use [Print Quality] to select the printing quality.**

   If [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] are selectable, select those as well.

   The available parameters for [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] vary depending on the media setting in the [**Media Explorer**] window.
5. **Click ▸ next to [Details].**
6. **From the [Direction] list, select [Bi-Direction] or [Uni-Direction].**
7. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Setting the Print Head Speed

This section explains how to set the print head's movement speed during printing ([**Head Speed**]).

Increasing [**Head Speed**] will shorten the printing time but lower the image quality. Decreasing [**Head Speed**] will have the opposite effect.

Consider the balance between printing time and image quality when setting this value.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click  [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click  for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click  [Quality].**
3. **Select the media to use in printing from [Media Name] under [Quality Settings].**
4. **Use [Print Quality] to select the printing quality.**

   If [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] are selectable, select those as well.

   The available parameters for [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] vary depending on the media setting in the [**Media Explorer**] window.
5. **Click ▸ next to [Details].**
6. **Select the [Ignore Default Settings] checkbox.**
7. **Enter the print head speed in the [Head Speed] box or use ⌃⌄ to set the speed.**

   The entered value will be set to the maximum value or minimum value if it exceeds or is below the range of settable values.
8. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Setting the Optimizer Ink Amount

The printing quality of water-based resin inks is affected by factors such as the media, temperature, and humidity.

It is recommended to perform test printing with multiple optimizer ink levels and set the optimizer ink amount to the level that provides the optimal image quality before performing actual printing.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

MEMO

If jobs with different optimizer ink levels have been set as a nested job, the message [**A different value has been set for each job.**] appears.
To perform actual printing, not test printing, with a nested job, set all the jobs to the same optimizer ink level.

Performing Test Printing to Determine the Optimizer Ink Amount

Perform test printing of multiple jobs with different optimizer ink levels and determine the level that provides the optimal image quality.

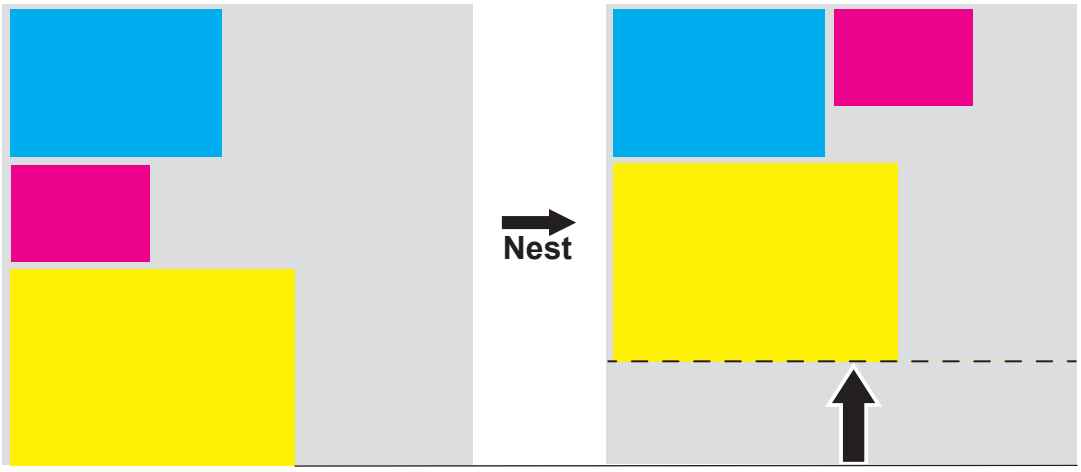
Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to duplicate the job for test printing.**
   - Right-click the job for test printing, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Duplicate Job**].
   - With the job for test printing selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Duplicate Job**].
2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
3. **Click [Color Management].**
4. **Use [Optimizer Level] under [Optimizer] to specify the optimizer ink amount.**
   The setting range is −5 to +5.
5. **Repeat Steps 1 to 4 to create multiple jobs with different optimizer ink amounts.**
6. **Create a nested job.**
   - With multiple jobs selected, right-click, and then click [**Compile Jobs**]>[**Nest**].
   - Click ⌄ on the right side of the job tool area, and then click [**Nest**].
7. **Perform printing.**
8. **Check the printing results and determine the optimizer ink amount that provides the optimal image quality.**

Efficiency Settings

Reducing the Amount of Media Used

Optimize media usage by arranging multiple jobs to minimize the total media usage.



The process of arranging multiple jobs to minimize the total media usage is called nesting. Also, a group of jobs nested together is called a nested job.

By effectively nesting jobs, you can minimize the amount of media that is used.

Creating a Nested Job from the Selected Jobs

Create nested jobs by selecting multiple jobs from the job list.

MEMO

Among all the selected jobs, the settings of the first job that was added to the job list are applied to the print settings of the nested job.

Procedure

1. **Select multiple jobs from the job list.**

   The method for selecting multiple jobs depends on the OS.

2. **Use one of the methods below to create a nested job.**

   - Right-click the selected multiple jobs, and then click **[Compile Jobs]**>**[Nest]**.
   - With multiple jobs selected, click ⌄ on the right side of the job tool area, and then click **[Nest]**.

   A nested job is created from the selected jobs. The name of the nested job will be **[Nest Job Date-Number]**. Serial numbers (-1, -2...) are assigned according to the creation order.

   - First nested job: **[Nest Job 12/8-1]**
   - Second nested job: **[Nest Job 12/8-2]**

Automatically Creating a Nested Job

It is possible to set the conditions and automatically create nested jobs.

The examples used in this explanation are cases in which there is more than one creator of print data. Print data is regularly loaded into VersaWorks via the network. Set processing conditions for loaded print data and create nested jobs. You can also automate processing by the RIP or even printing, if necessary.

The print data processing conditions are as follows.

- **[By Time]**

  When the specified time is reached, a nested job is created.
- **[By Paper Length]**

  A nested job is created to the specified length.
- **[By Number of Jobs]**

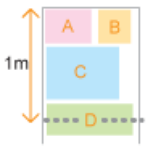
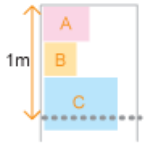
  A nested job is created when the specified number is reached.

If **[Action]** under **[Action for Incoming Jobs]** has been used to set **[RIP Only]** or **[RIP and Print]**, processing by the RIP or printing will be performed when the nested jobs are completed.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to configure settings.**

   The **[Queue Properties]** window appears.
2. **Configure the printing settings such as the media and print quality.**
3. **Click [Job Management].**
4. **With [Jobs are automatically nested on the following conditions.], turn on the conditions to specify, then enter the values.**

[By Time]	When the specified time is reached, a nested job is created. If you set **[Set Time Interval]**, nested jobs are created according to the set interval of time.
[By Paper Length]	A nested job is created to the specified length. You also will not be able to check the state of nesting in the layout window until the nested job is finished. For example, if you set **[By Paper Length]** to 1000.00 mm, a nested job for 1 m is created. At this point, the state of nesting is displayed in the layout window.  However, until the nested job is created, jobs are listed in the order that they are added to the job list even if 1 m is reached before nesting, as shown on the left side of the diagram shown below. 

[By Number of Jobs]	A nested job is created when the number of jobs registered in the queue folder reaches the specified value. With a UV printer, [**Compose**] can be selected. For more information, refer to Composing TIFF Image Print Data: [Compose Job](P. 144).

If you select multiple conditions, a nested job is created when at least one of the conditions is met.

5. **Click [OK].**

The [**Queue Properties**] window closes.

6. **Add the print data to the job list.**

MEMO

- If you change the settings in the [**Queue Properties**] window when there are jobs that are waiting to be nested, those jobs will no longer be nested automatically.
- You can rearrange the jobs in nested jobs in the layout area of the [**Settings**] window.
- You can set the [**Action**] in [**Action for Incoming Jobs**] to [**RIP and Print**] to automate the entire process from the creation of nested jobs to printing.
- While a nested job is selected, perform one of the following operations to undo the nesting.
  - Right-click a nested job, and then click [**Compile Jobs**]>[**Unnest**].
  - Click ⌄ on the right side of the job tool area, and then click [**Unnest**].

The [**RIP**] and [**PRINT**] fields in the job list show ⏸ for jobs that are waiting to be nested. Nested jobs are automatically created when the specified condition is met.

Automating Processing by the RIP and Printing

This section explains how to configure the settings so that jobs added to the job list are automatically processed by the RIP, printed, or processed after printing.

Processing a Job by the RIP or Printing a Job Automatically

Sets the operation when print data is added to the job list.

[**Do Nothing**] is the default setting, but the amount of time required can be shortened by setting [**RIP Only**] or [**RIP and Print**].

However, [**RIP and Print**] should be used with caution, as print data is printed using the [**Queue Properties**] settings.

Procedure

1. **Click  for the queue folder to configure settings.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click  [Job Management].**

3. **From [Action] under [Action for Incoming Jobs], select one of the following.**

[RIP Only]	Processing by the RIP is automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.
[RIP and Print]	Both processing by the RIP and printing are automatically performed when a job is added to the job list. With this setting, you cannot specify the print count.

   MEMO

   Select the [**Auto Rotate to Save Media**] checkbox to reduce the amount of wasted media by automatically placing portrait images horizontally. This function operates independently from what is selected for [**Action**]. If you select this checkbox, jobs will be rotated and arranged on the media automatically even if [**Do Nothing**] is selected for [**Action**].

4. **Set other items as necessary.**

5. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window closes.

6. **Add the print data to the job list.**

   The set process is performed automatically.

Setting Processing after Printing Is Completed

This section explains how to process a job after printing is completed.

- **[Save Job]**

  Jobs will be saved after printing finishes.
- **[Delete RIP Data]**

  All intermediate data such as the data processed by the RIP will be deleted, but the job will remain in the job list.
- **[Delete Job]**

  Jobs will be deleted completely and will be deleted from the job list.

Procedure

1. **Click  for the queue folder to configure settings.**

   The **[Queue Properties]** window appears.

2. **Click  [Job Management].**

3. **Select the processing method from [Action After Printing] under [RIP and Print].**

[Save Job][*1]	The data processed by the RIP is kept, so you can print the job again without having to process it by the RIP. However, as more jobs are added to the job list, finding jobs involves more effort.
[Delete RIP Data]	To print the job again, you will have to process it by the RIP again. VersaWorks will have less data capacity than if **[Save Job]** is used, but the number of jobs in the job list will increase.
[Delete Job]	When the output is finished, the job is deleted and the queue folder is emptied. To print the job again, the print data must be saved separately.

   *1 Default value

4. **Click [OK].**

   The **[Queue Properties]** window closes.

> MEMO
>
> When you are changing the settings so that they are different for different jobs, you can add them to the job list and then change them in the **[Settings]** window.

Printing while Processing by the RIP

Use the following procedure to configure the settings so that jobs are printed while they are processed by the RIP. The total processing time will be smaller than the sum of the time it takes to process by the RIP and print separately.

MEMO

Under certain conditions, [**RIP while Printing**] is disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Job Management].**
3. **Select the [RIP while Printing] checkbox under [RIP and Print].**

   MEMO

   You can enable this setting even if the [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**]>[**RIP and Print**]>[**Print Options**]>[**Configure Advanced Print Settings**] checkbox on the menu bar is selected, but the operation is disabled and printing is performed after processing by the RIP finishes.

   Mac: [**Preferences**] is displayed as [**Preferences**].
4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].
5. **Perform printing.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed at the same time.

Outputting Multiple Jobs at Once

This section explains how to group multiple jobs and thereby output them with a single operation.

- Example 1

  Group together print data A, print data B, and print data C and print three copies. Because the printed materials will be in the sequence A-B-C, A-B-C, and A-B-C, you can produce 3 copies of the print object.

- Example 2

  By grouping white print data, CMYK print data, and gloss print data and performing pullback printing with the white and CMYK print data, you can obtain layered printing in the order of white > CMYK > gloss. In this case, for white print data and CMYK print data, select the checkbox for **[Cut Controls]**>**[Cutting Options]**>**[Return to Origin After Print]**, and then perform pullback printing.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Unlike nested jobs, the layout of the print data cannot be changed for grouped jobs. Therefore, printing such as that described under Reducing the Amount of Media Used(P. 74) is not possible, even if the print data is grouped.

Procedure

1. **Configure settings individually for each job as necessary.**

2. **Select multiple jobs from the job list.**

   The method for selecting multiple jobs depends on the OS.

   MEMO

   Job groups are grouped in the order they are selected. To specify the printing order, select the jobs in the printing order.

3. **Perform one of the following operations to group the jobs.**

   - Right-click the selected multiple jobs, and then click **[Compile Jobs]**>**[Multiple Job Grouping]**.
   - With multiple jobs selected, click ⌄ on the right side of the job tool area, and then click **[Multiple Job Grouping]**.

4. **Select and print the job group.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Adding a Name to a Queue Folder

Adding a name to a queue folder will make it easier to organize jobs. The queue folder name is retained even after exiting VersaWorks. However when the registered machine is deleted, the queue folder names are also deleted.

Some usage examples are listed below.

- Separating according to client (example: Queue A > Roland DG, Queue B > DGSHAPE)
- Separating according to used media name (example: Queue A > transparent media, Queue B > PVC media)
- Separating according to work day (example: Queue A > 10/13, Queue B > 10/14)

Procedure

1. **Click  for the queue folder to configure settings.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] appears.

2. **Enter the desired name in [Queue Name].**

3. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window closes, and the entered name is displayed in Queue.

   MEMO

   - The size of the queue folder tabs changes to match the width of Queue with the longest name.
   - The number of Queue items that are displayed depends on the width of the window.

Reuse Settings

Saving and Reusing Printed Jobs

You can export the information and RIP processed data in the printing settings of a printed job and manage it as a file in a separate folder.

The three types of files that can be saved are the following.

- **[VW Job Files]**

  This file contains only the printing settings such as the job's source data (print data) information, the media width, the number of copies to print, and the profile. The file takes up the least space.

  When saving as a **[VW Job Files]**, be sure to also save the source data. If the source data is not present, it will not be possible to load the **[VW Job Files]**.

- **[VW Job + Source File]**

  This file contains the **[VW Job Files]**, in which the printing setting information is saved, and the source data. Saving this file makes it possible to print the same data with the same printing settings again.

  If printing was performed from the design software, it is necessary to save in **[VW Job + Source File]** format.

- **[Native file]**

  This file contains RIP processed data. Although this file takes up the most space, it reduces the processing performed by the computer and shortens the work time when printing the data again.

It is also possible to manage using a VersaWorks job list rather than managing as a file. The characteristics of each are as shown below.

Item	Managing as a job list	Managing as a file
Management	Source data is managed in a separate folder, however the printing settings and other information are managed using a job list.	The source data, printing settings, RIP data, and other information are managed together in a folder.
Reprinting	Reprinting is easy because there is a job that was processed by the RIP.	Import into VersaWorks again in order to reprint.
New print data	Scroll the job list and access the new print data that is added at the bottom.	Access to new print data is easy because the job list can be made empty.

Saving a VW Job File

Saves only the printing settings information of the job (such as the job's source data information, the media width, the number of copies to print, and the profile) as a file.

IMPORTANT

- When saving a **[VW Job Files]**, be sure to also save the source data. If the source data is not present, it will not be possible to load the **[VW Job Files]**.
- If printing was performed from the design software, it is necessary to save in **[VW Job + Source File]** format.
  P. 85 Saving a VW Job + Source Data File

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job you printed.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to save a VW job file.**

   - Click  in the job tool area.

- Right-click a job, and then click [**Export**]>[**Save VW Job File**].

The [**Save As**] window appears.

3. **Enter the file name, and then click [Save...].**

The [**VW Job Files**] is saved.

Printing Using a VW Job File

Printing is performed using the saved [**VW Job Files**].

MEMO

If the save location of the source data (print data) is changed after [**VW Job Files**] was saved, the message [**Original file " * " does not exist.Do you want to specify the folder?**] is displayed. In this case, click [**Yes**], and then specify the new location where the source data is saved. To cancel the loading of the file, click [**No**].

Procedure

1. **Add [VW Job Files] to the job list.**

   The name of the original data is displayed in the job list. The printing conditions are automatically set to the saved details.

2. **If necessary, change the [Settings].**

3. **Perform printing.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Saving a VW Job + Source Data File

Save the VW job file (in which the printing settings information is saved) and the source data (print data) as a single file.

MEMO

- If printing was performed from the design software, save in [**VW Job + Source File**] format. If printing was performed from the design software, deleting the job also deletes the source data at the same time. Because the source data is required when reloading a VW job, save the job in the [**VW Job + Source File**] format so that you can load the source data.
- If you set the format to [**VW Job + Source File**], the file size is larger than that when saving just the [**VW Job Files**]. However, this format also has the advantage of eliminating the need to save the source data separately.

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job you printed.**
2. **Right-click a job, and then click [Export]>[Save VW Job File (including source file)].**
   The [**Save As**] window appears.
3. **Enter the file name, and then click [Save...].**
   The VW job + source data is saved as a single file.

Printing Using a VW Job + Source Data File

Printing is performed using the saved [**VW Job + Source File**].

Procedure

1. **Add [VW Job + Source File] to the job list.**

   The name of the source data is displayed in the job list. The saved details are applied to the printing conditions.

2. **If necessary, change the [Settings].**

3. **Perform printing.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Saving the [Native file]

Save RIP processed data as a [**Native file**] (.prt extension).

MEMO

This makes it possible to transfer the file directly to and print from the printer without performing processing by the RIP, which reduces the processing performed by the computer and shortens the work time. However, the print settings cannot be changed when printing the job again. The [**Native file**] file size varies depending on the print quality and output size.

Procedure

1. **Right-click a printed job, and then click [Print]>[Save Native File].**
   The [**Save As**] window appears.

2. **Enter the file name, and then click [Save...].**
   The [**Native file**] is saved.

Printing Using the [Native file]

Printing is performed using the saved [**Native file**]. In advance, set up the media with the printer that will be used for printing, then perform the following.

IMPORTANT

You cannot add the [**Native file**] to the job list. Nor can you change their print settings. Before printing, make sure that the media (type and size) currently loaded in the printer is identical to the media used when you saved the [**Native file**].

Procedure

1. **Select the printer to print from, and then click ☰ (the hamburger menu).**

2. **Click [Send Native File].**

   The [**Open**] window appears.

3. **Select the saved [Native file] and click [Open].**

   The [**Send Native File**] window appears, and then printing starts. The [**Send Native File**] window shows the progress of the file transfer and automatically closes when the file transfer is complete.

Reusing Queue Folder Settings

You can only use up to five queue folders, so only five sets of queue folder settings are available for daily use. However, you can use this function to retain settings for each client or type of media and reproduce the queue folder settings.

Here we provide an example in which the queue folder settings are saved as a printing settings file in Step 1 and are applied to another queue folder in Step 2.

However, if it is difficult to save/apply the queue folder settings, consider using the [**Add-ons**]. You can increase the number of queue folders up to 20.

Step 1: Saving Printing Settings

Procedure

1. **Click  for the queue folder that will be the target for the save operation.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

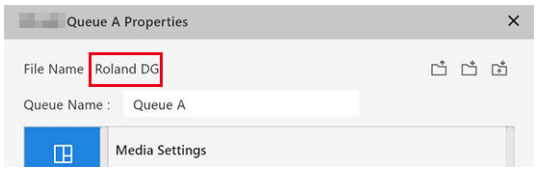
2. **Click .**

   The [**Save Printing Settings File**] window appears.

3. **Enter the desired name in [File Name].**

4. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the [**Queue Properties**] window. The file name that you entered in Step 3 is displayed at the top of the window.

   MEMO

   If the name of the printing settings file is not displayed, the printing settings of the [Queue Properties] window have not been saved to the printing settings file.

5. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window closes.

Step 2: Loading Files to Use Printing Settings with Queue Folders

Step 2: Loading Files to Use Printing Settings with Queue Folders

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click .**

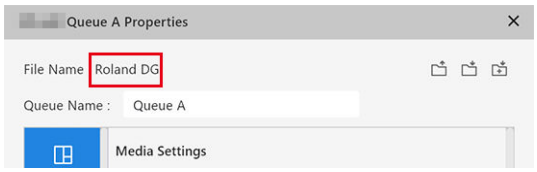
   The [**Select Printing Settings File**] window appears.

3. **Click the printing settings file to use from the list of printing settings files.**

   The information of the printing settings file is displayed on the right side of the screen.

4. **Click [OK].**

   The name of the loaded file is displayed in the [**Queue Properties**] window.

5. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window closes.

Overwriting Saved Printing Settings Files

Procedure

1. **Click  for the queue folder to overwrite.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Change the print settings.**

3. **Click .**

   The print settings are overwritten.

   MEMO

   When the same printing settings file is used by multiple [**Queue Properties**], an update confirmation message will be displayed.

   Example: When the same printing settings file is used in the Queue A and Queue B properties, and Queue A was changed

   - Click [**Yes**] to overwrite the print settings of the Queue A and Queue B properties that are using the same printing settings file.
   - When [**No**] is clicked, the Queue A print settings are overwritten, however the printing settings file name disappears. The Queue B print settings are not changed, and the initial printing settings file name remains the same.

4. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window closes.

Deleting Printing Settings Files

The number of printing settings files that you can save is not limited, but you can delete any printing settings files that are no longer necessary.

MEMO

[**Default Setting**] and the printing settings file that is currently in use cannot be deleted.

Procedure

1. **Click  for the queue folder that will be the target for the deletion operation.**
   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.
2. **Click  or .**
   The [**Select Printing Settings File**] or [**Save Printing Settings File**] window appears.
3. **Click the printing settings file that you want to delete from the list of printing settings files.**
4. **Click .**
5. **In the delete confirmation window, click [OK].**
   The printing settings file is deleted.
6. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Select Printing Settings File**] or [**Save Printing Settings File**] window closes.
7. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Queue Properties**] window closes.

Reusing Job Settings

The print settings of a given job (job A) can be used with a different job (job B) that already exists in the job list. In this way, the same print settings can be applied to different print data.

Most print settings can be reused, but there are limitations on the following items.

Items that cannot be used (Setting value returns to the default value.)

[Layout]	[Print Properties]	[Page Range]	[from]
			[Exit]
		[Orientation]*1	
[Clip and Tile]	All items		
[Step & Repeat]*2	All items		

*1 is set regardless of the job A and job B settings.

*2 This menu is set by right-clicking the job or by clicking on the left side of the job tool area.

Items where the job A settings are not applied and the job B settings remain (Setting value remains the same as before reuse.)

[Layout]	[EPS]	[Margin]
[Color Replacement]	[Spot Colors] list	
	[Special Color Settings] list	
[Variable Data]	All items	

Items that take on the setting values of the leading page of job A

[Layout]	[Scaling]	[Scale]
	[Position]	[X]
		[Y]

Using Job Printing Settings with Other Jobs

Procedure

1. From the job list, select the job (job A) whose print settings will be copied.
2. Right-click the selected job, and then click [Copy/Paste Setting Value]>[Copy].
3. From the job list, select the job (job B) in which to paste the setting values.
4. Right-click the selected job, and then click [Copy/Paste Setting Value]>[Paste].
   The job B settings are updated with the details of job A.

Saving the Printing Settings of the Job

When the details for a job have been set, these settings can be saved. The saved settings can be applied to a different job or queue folder.

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job that has been configured with the printing settings to save.**
2. **Right-click the selected job, and then click [Copy/Paste Setting Value]>[Save as Printing Settings File].**
   The [**Save Printing Settings File**] window appears.
3. **Enter the desired name in [File Name].**
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Save Printing Settings File**] window closes.

MEMO

Follow the procedure below to check the saved file.

1. Select the saved printer, and click  for the desired queue file.
2. Click .
   The [**Select Printing Settings File**] window appears.
3. Select the saved file.
   [**File Attributes**] and [**Job Properties**] can be checked.

Loading Files to Use Printing Settings with Other Jobs

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job to use.**
2. **Right-click the selected job, and then click [Copy/Paste Setting Value]>[Apply Printing Settings File].**
   The [**Select Printing Settings File**] window appears.
3. **From the list of printing settings files, click the printing settings file to load.**
   The information of the printing settings file is displayed on the right side of the screen.
4. **Click [OK].**
   The printing settings are applied to the job.

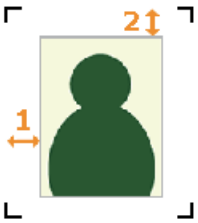
Printing Settings

Printing with Added Marks and Information 97
Adding Trim Marks or Margin Marks 97
Adding Job Properties 101
Adding an Overlap Width for Tiled Printing 103
Adding Color Bars 106
Specifying the Printing Area, Print Count, and Overprinting Count When Printing 107
Printing the Selected Area of the Image: [**Clip Image**] 107
Tiling an Image 111
Printing a Single Image Side by Side: [**Step & Repeat**] 114
Performing Overprinting: [**Overprint**] 116
Printing Specific Layers 117
Printing Specific Layers of the Print Data 117
Printing That Combines Data Files and Templates: [**Variable Data**] 120
What Is Variable Printing? 120
Creating a Layout Template in VersaWorks 131
Creating Templates with Illustration Software 132
Editing a Data File 134
Creating, Editing, and Exporting a Data File 135
Printing Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other 137
Printing Multiple Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other 137
Composing TIFF Image Print Data: [**Compose Job**] 144
Composing PDF Print Data: [**Compose Job**] 146
Printing Using the Rotary Axis Unit 147
Printing on a Cylindrical Object 147
Printing Using Structural Ink 149
Configuring Cutting Settings for Landscape Print Data 150
Gradation Printing 152
Printing with Smooth Gradations 152
Printing with a Cylindrical Printer 153
Printing on a Cylindrical Object 153
Specifying the Printing Position in the Rotation Direction 155

Printing with Added Marks and Information

Adding Trim Marks or Margin Marks

Add trim marks, margin marks, or special cut marks around the image.

Type	Mark	Details
[Trim Marks]		Prints trim marks added at the four corners of the image as shown in the diagram.
[Margin Marks]		Leaves margins around the image and prints the margin marks at the four corners of the margin as shown in the diagram. Set the horizontal margin with [**Horizontal**] (1) and the vertical margin with [**Vertical**] (2) for the image.
[FOTOBA Cutline Marks]		When a Fotoba cutter is in use, adds specialized cut marks before printing. Set the positions in which to print the marks and the spacing between the image and the marks.
[KALAXY Cutline Marks]		When a Kala cutter is in use, adds specialized cut marks before printing. There are two types of cut marks. To match the specifications of these marks, specify the horizontal line type and whether to add a stop mark.
[KALA RoXY Cutline Marks]		
[Neolt Cutline Marks]		When a Neolt cutter is in use, adds specialized cut marks before printing.

Type	Mark	Details
[Graphtec Registration Marks]		When a Graphtec cutter is in use, adds specialized cut marks before printing.
[OPOS Marks]		When a Summa cutter is in use, adds specialized cut marks before printing.

MEMO

- You can set [**Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)**] regardless of whether margin marks or trim marks are present.
- When you add Graphtec registration marks or OPOS marks, you cannot print color bars.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click ⚙ [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click ⚙ for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click ⌜⌝ [Mark].**
3. **Select the mark to be added from [Type] under [Marks].**
4. **Set the details.**

   IMPORTANT

   There are no settings for trim marks or for Neolt.

   - **Margin marks**
     - Specify the horizontal margin with [**Horizontal**].
     - Specify the vertical margin with [**Vertical**].
   - **Fotoba marks**

- Specify the positions in which to print the marks with [**Print Location**].
- Specify the spacing between the vertical/horizontal marks and the image with [**Image/Mark Spacing**].

- **KALAXY marks**
  - Specify [**Double Line**] or [**Single Line**] with [**Horizontal Line Type**].
  - Select the [**Add stop marks**] checkbox to print the three lines with spacing of 150 mm [5.91 in.] from the last mark.
- **KALA RoXY marks**
  - Select the [**Add stop marks**] checkbox to print the three lines with spacing of 150 mm [5.91 in.] from the last mark.
- **Graphtec registration marks**
  - [**Pattern**]

    Specify the registration mark type.
    - [**4 Points Type 1**]
    - [**4 Points Type 2**]
    - [**Segment Area Type 1**]
    - [**Segment Area Type 2**]
  - [**Barcode Type**]

    MEMO

    With [**Continuous Operation (Front Edge Only)**], the barcode is printed after the other printing finishes. With [**Continuous Operation (Rear Edge Only)**], the barcode is printed before the other printing starts.
    Use [**Continuous Operation (Rear Edge Only)**] when you are performing continuous printing on roll media, taking the media up, and then loading the media in a Graphtec cutter.

    With [**Standard**], the entire process is completed each time. With [**Continuous Operation (Both Edges)**], [**Continuous Operation (Front Edge Only)**], and [**Continuous Operation (Rear Edge Only)**], the following process is repeated: the barcode is read, cutting is performed, the barcode is searched for and read, and cutting is performed.
    - [**None**]
    - [**Standard**]
    - [**Continuous Operation (Both Edges)**]
    - [**Continuous Operation (Front Edge Only)**]
    - [**Continuous Operation (Rear Edge Only)**]
  - [**Margin**]

    Specify the length from the image to the registration mark. This can be set when [**Barcode Type**] is set to [**None**] or [**Standard**].
  - [**Min Segment Length**]

    When [**Pattern**] is set to [**Segment Area Type 1**] or [**Segment Area Type 2**], specify the minimum length of the intermediate registration mark.
  - [**White around marks**]

    To make it easier to read registration marks and barcodes on transparent or milky white media, print the Wh plate around the registration marks/barcodes. When a mode that includes Wh such as Wh -> CMYK or CMYK -> Wh is selected with [**Quality**]>[**Print Quality**]>[**Mode**], you can turn this setting on.
- **OPOS marks**

- [Barcode Type]

MEMO

With [**OPOS (Bottom only)**], the barcode is printed after the other printing finishes. Use this setting when you are performing continuous printing on roll media, taking the media up, and then loading the media in a Summa cutter.

  - [None]
  - [OPOS (Both)]
  - [OPOS (Bottom only)]
- [Margin]

  Specify the length from the image to the mark.

5. Click [OK].

- Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
- When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
  - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
  - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**]. The changes are reflected in the layout area of the main window.

MEMO

If you have set Graphtec registration marks or OPOS marks, the ID for Graphtec Studio2 or for Summa GoSign will be acquired at this point in time.

6. Perform printing.

- [Graphtec Registration Marks]

  If [**Configure Advanced Print Settings**] under [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**]>[**RIP and Print**] on the menu bar is on, you can specify whether to link with Graphtec Studio2 in the same window. Even if this setting is off, you can right-click the corresponding job and click [**Export**]>[**Export to Graphtec Studio 2**] to link with this software.
- [OPOS Marks]

  If [**Configure Advanced Print Settings**] under [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**]>[**RIP and Print**] on the menu bar is on, you can specify whether to save data in the Summa GoSign hot folder in the same window. Even if this setting is off, you can right-click the corresponding job and click [**Export**]>[**Export to Summa GoSign**] to save data in the hot folder.

IMPORTANT

Refer to Configuring Hot Folder Settings for Summa GoSign(P. 13) and create a hot folder in advance. If this setting has not been configured, you cannot save data.

Adding Job Properties

The model name and serial number of the printer that was used, as well as the job name, are printed below the printed item. The following items can also be added. The printing size can be checked in the layout area in the [**Settings**] window.

[**File Name**]	Print data file name
[**Layout**]	Number of copies and scale
[**Quality Settings**]	Current quality settings
[**Color Settings**]	Details of the [**Color Settings**]
[**Printer Color Match**]	Information of the color match between the reference color and the target color
[**File Format**]	Settings of the [**Spot Color**] and [**Special Color**] (only when the conversion is enabled)
[**Device Controls**]	Feed calibration (only when [**Use Printer Settings**] is not selected)
[**Job Management**]	Job handling after printing
[**Clip and Tile**]	Location of the tile (clipped location and tile size for a clipped image)
[**Special Color**]	Spot color plate generation or correction
[**Date/Time**]	Date and time that the job was processed
[**Notes**]	Text entered in the input field

MEMO

You can use the preview in the layout area to check where the job properties will be printed.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click  [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click  for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click**  **[Mark].**
3. **Select the [Print Job Properties] checkbox under [Job Property Label].**

   The model name and serial number of the printer that was used, as well as the job name, will be printed. As necessary, turn on any additional items to be printed.
4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].

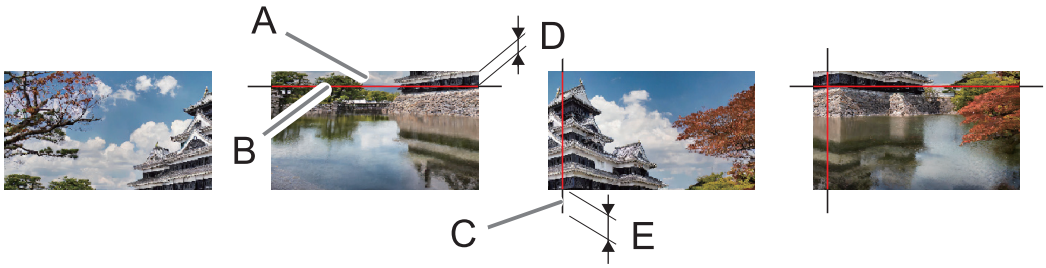
- To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**]. The changes are reflected in the layout area of the main window.

Adding an Overlap Width for Tiled Printing

When dividing a large job for printing (tiled printing), add an overlap width to the divided part (tile).



The position for adding overlap (A) can be set individually from top, bottom, left, or right. Specify whether to print the overlap line (B). If printing, specify the stroke width and color. Trim marks (C) are added to the left and right of the overlap.



A	Overlap	• Specify the position for adding overlap in **[Position]**. • Specify the overlap width between 0.5 and 100 mm (0.02 and 3.93 in.) in **[Size]** (D).
B	Overlap line	• Overlap is added when **[Print Overlap Lines]** is selected. • Specify the overlap line width between 0.1 and 0.5 mm (3.94 and 19.68 mil) in **[Thickness]**. • Specify the overlap line color in **[Color Settings]**.
C	Trim mark *1	Specify the trim mark length (E) between 0 and 10 mm (0 and 0.39 in.).

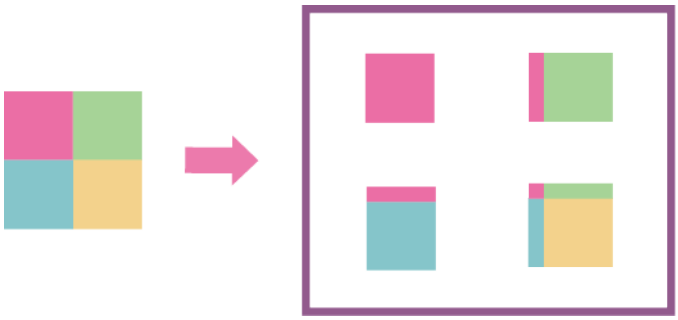
*1 Used when overlapping and applying media, then cutting along the trim mark to remove the overlapped portion.

This section explains how to configure the settings for jobs, not queue folders.

Procedure

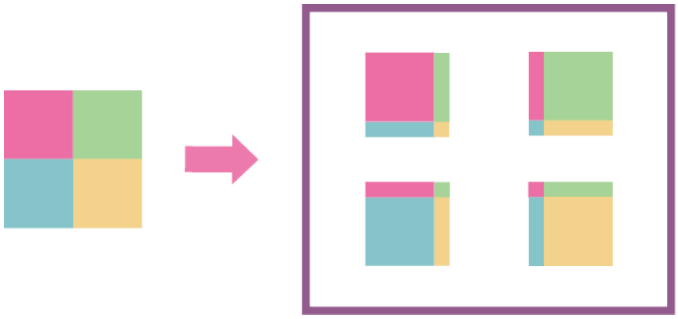
1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click **[Settings]**.
2. **Click [Clip and Tile].**
3. **Follow Tiling an Image(P. 111) to divide the image into tiles.**
4. **Specify the overlap position in [Position] under [Overlap].**
   - When applying from lower right

Creates overlap widths at the top and left of tiles. Set this when applying the lower-right (yellow) panel first, followed by the remaining three panels.



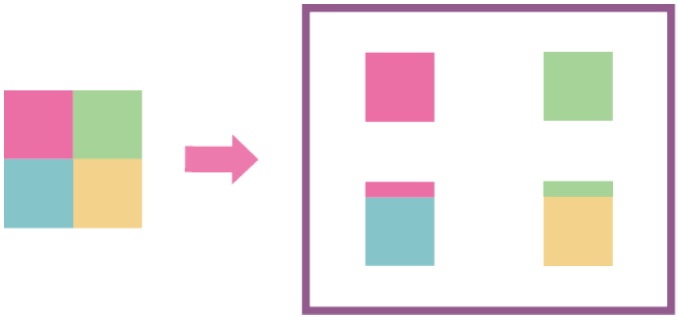
- When no application order is determined

  Sets overlap on all four sides. Application can be started from any tile.



- When applying to two panels

  Sets overlap from the bottom. Set this when overlap is required only vertically, not horizontally.



5. **Configure the advanced overlap settings.**

- **[Size]**

  Specifies the overlap width.
- **[Print Overlap Lines]**

  Turn this on to print overlap lines.
- **[Thickness]**

  When printing overlap lines, specify the overlap line width.
- **[Color Settings]**

  When printing overlap lines, specify the overlap line color using the value of **[CMYK]** or **[RGB]**.

6. **When printing trim marks, specify [Cut Line Length].**

When trim marks are not necessary, specify 0 mm (0 in.).

7. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

Adding Color Bars

Print a color bar on the right side or left side, or color bars on both sides of the job to improve the discharge stability. Ink is discharged from all nozzles during printing, preventing the nozzles from clogging.

MEMO

- In the preview image, color bars are displayed with four colors (CMYK) regardless of the ink types of the printer. The actual printed color bars will differ from those displayed in the preview.
- [**Spot Color**] is printed with horizontal alignment in an order such as CMYKWhGlPr.
- If the same color is used in two slots, such as with CMYKWhWhGlGl, the width of that color's color bar is doubled.
- Optimizer ink is printed under CMYK.
- Color bars are printed outside marks such as Fotoba marks.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click  [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click  for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.

2. **Click  [Mark].**

3. **Set the following with [Color Bar].**
   - **Color bar positions**

     Specify the positions with the [**Left**] and [**Right**] checkboxes.
   - **Color bar width**

     Use [**Width**] to specify the total width of each color bar.
   - **Spacing between color bar(s) and image**

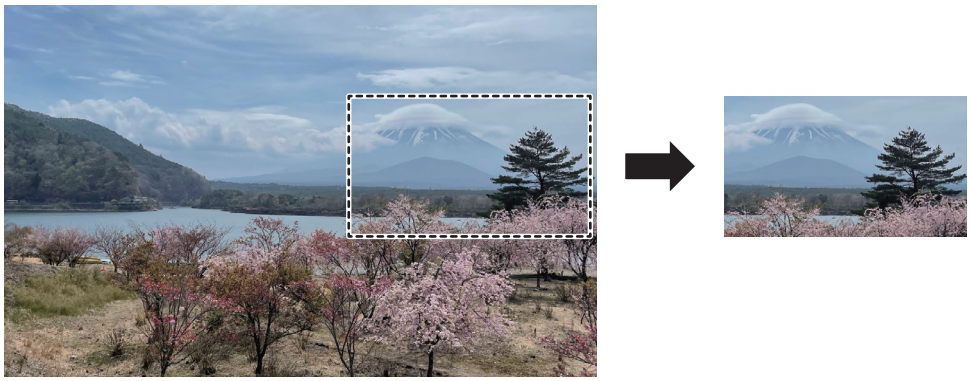
     Use [**Spacing**] to specify the spacing between the color bar(s) and the image.

4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**]. The changes are reflected in the layout area of the main window.

Specifying the Printing Area, Print Count, and Overprinting Count When Printing

Printing the Selected Area of the Image: [Clip Image]

Select and print only a part of the image. This function is useful when you want to print just a part of a job with a large printing size and check the color tone or picture quality before printing the whole job.



Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

2. **Click [Clip and Tile].**

3. **Select the [Clip Image] checkbox under [Clipping].**

4. **Set the part to be printed (the clip area).**
   - **Entering the values**
     a. In [**Size**], enter the width and the height of the clip area.
     b. In [**Top Left Position**], enter the location of the upper-left corner of the clip area with the origin at the upper-left corner of the image.

     MEMO
     - [**Top Left Position**] can be set within the range such that the clip area set with [**Size**] does not go beyond the edges of the original image.
     - Be sure to set [**Size**] before setting [**Top Left Position**].

   - **Dragging the mouse in the layout area**
     a. In the layout area, click .

     If the icon is blue, it is already selected.
     b. Point to the small square (the clip point) on the clip line (the red line in the figure).
     c. Drag the clip point to set the clip area.

To fine-tune the clip area, use  and  to enlarge the preview image, and then drag the clip point again.

MEMO

You can also combine both methods to configure the settings. For example, you can set the clip area roughly in the layout area, and then fine-tune the clip area by entering the values. You can also perform Maintaining the Clipped Position(P. 109).

5. **Click [OK].**

You are returned to the main window.

6. **Perform printing.**

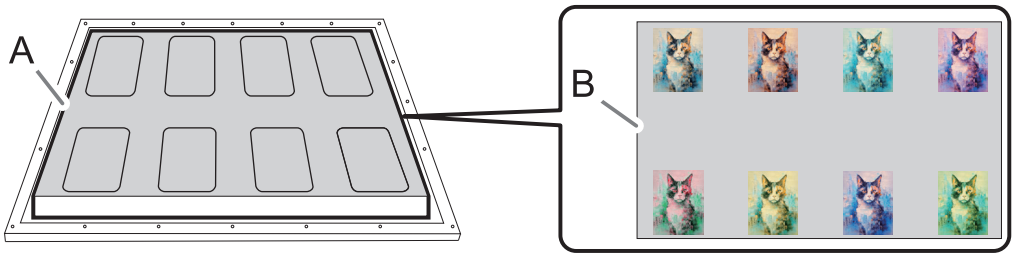
Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Maintaining the Clipped Position

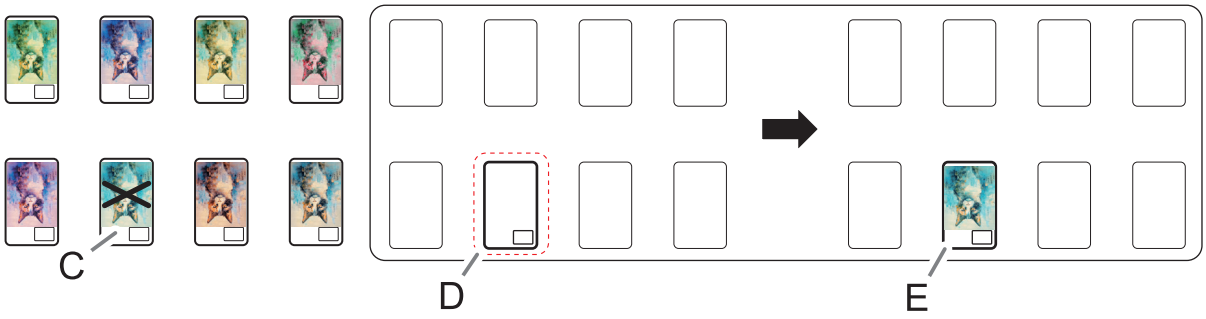
Print a clipped image while maintaining its original position. You can reprint only the necessary part of the same print data.

As an example, this section explains printing to multiple objects using a flat-bed model.

1. Place the jig (A) on the table, and position eight objects.
2. Create print data (B) for the jig size, and perform printing.



3. Because a problem (C) occurred during printing, position an object to be printed on only in that position (D) and perform reprinting (E).



Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.

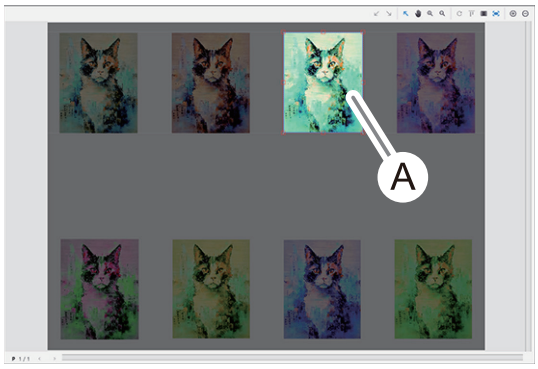
- Double-click the job to set.
- Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
- With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

2. Click [Clip and Tile].

3. Select the [Clip Image] checkbox under [Clipping].

4. Part for reprinting: Set the clip area (A).

Either drag the red points in the layout area or use [**Top Left Position**] and [**Size**] under [**Clipping**] and set the clip area.

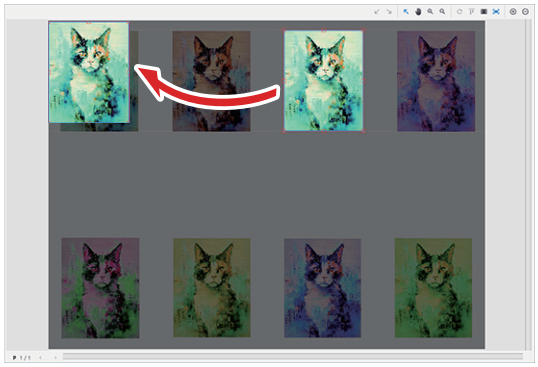


5. **Select the [Maintain Clipped Position] checkbox.**

You can print a clipped image maintained at its original position.

IMPORTANT

If this setting is not made, the clipped image will automatically be placed in the origin position.



MEMO

[**Maintain Clipped Position**] cannot be set in the following situations:

- Tiling has been set.
- There are multiple pages.
- Nested job
- Multiple copies are printed.

6. **Click [OK].**

You are returned to the main window.

Tiling an Image

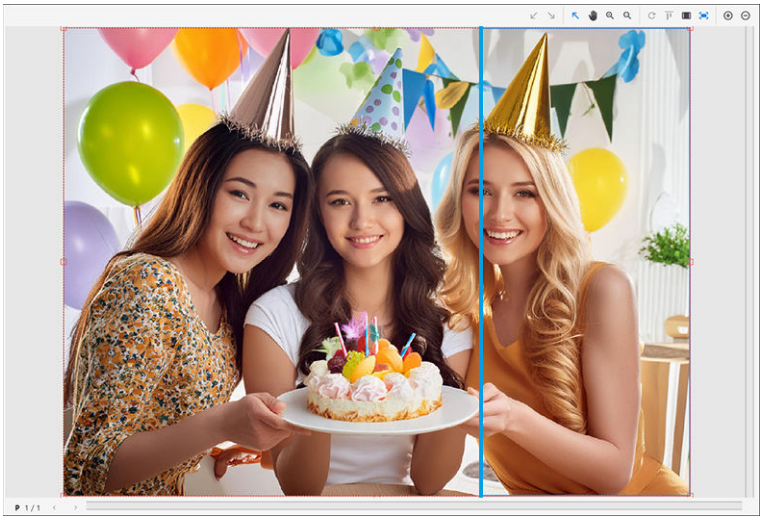
When printing an image that will not fit on the width of the roll media, or when printing divided onto multiple media (objects to be printed on) with a flat-bed printer, configure the tile position and size settings.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click ⚙ **[Settings]**.

2. **Click [Clip and Tile].**
   The image in the layout area is zoomed in on.

3. **In [Tiling], select one of the tiling methods shown below.**
   - **[Manual Tiling]**
     Sets the number of tiles and the tile size. This print data is tiled by a blue vertical line according to the media size. Next adjust the position so that a face is not divided.



   a. Align the pointer with the tiling line (blue line) in the layout area preview.

   > **MEMO**
   > Align the pointer with the border line (red line) and drag to the inside to clip the image and change the part that is printed.

   b. Drag the tiling line and move it to the location where you want to divide the image.

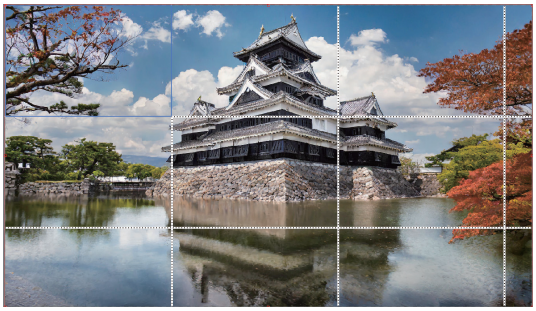


If you want to further divide the image horizontally, align the pointer with the red line on the right edge or left edge and drag the line.

c. To divide the image divided vertically also, align the pointer with the red line at bottom edge or top edge of the preview and drag the line.

- **[Tile Size]**

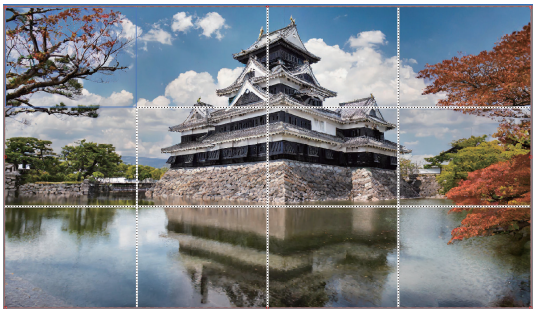
  Divides the job evenly at the specified size with the origin at the upper-left corner of the media. The tiles on the right and bottom edges may be smaller than the specified size.



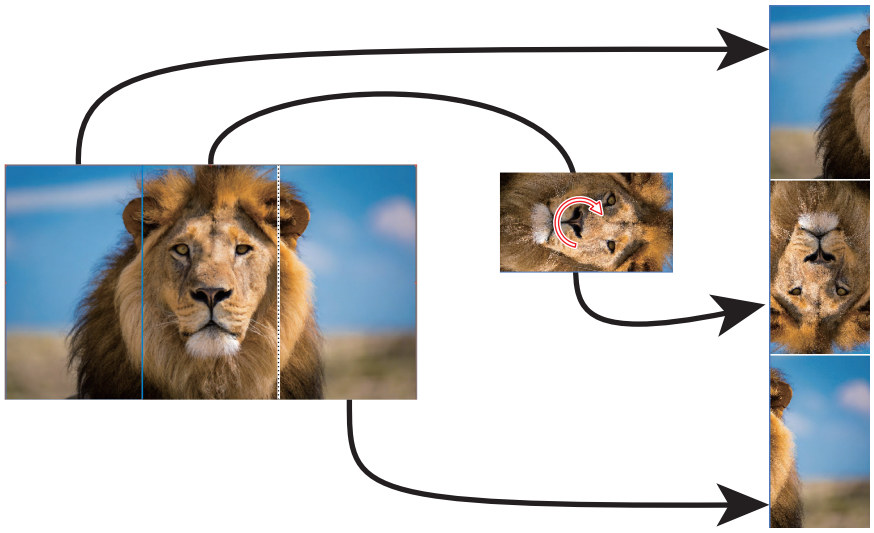
Select the tile size from **[Size]**. If you want to set a size other than the standard sizes, select **[CustomCUT]** or **[CustomROLL]**, and then enter the width and height.

- **[Number of Tiles]**

  Divides the job into the number of tiles specified with **[Horizontal]** and **[Vertical]**. All tiles have the same size.

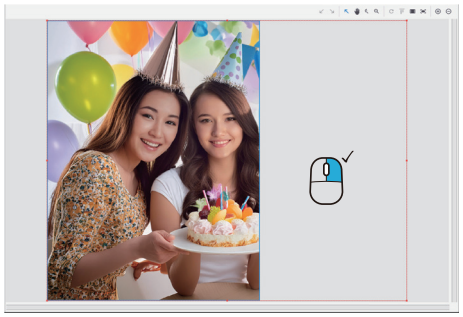


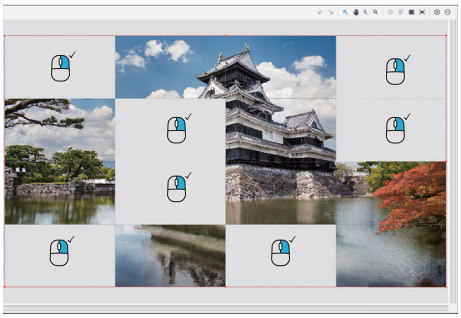
Select the **[Place alternately]** check box to rotate the tiles in even-numbered columns 180 degrees. This will make the seam color difference less visible when the tiles are pasted together.



MEMO

You can show or hide each tile by right-clicking it in the layout area. Hidden tiles are not printed. However it is not possible to set so that all tiles are not printed.





4. Click [Layout].

You can use the layout area to check how the tiled image is arranged on the media.

MEMO

To arrange the layout, drag the preview of the tiled image directly or click or .

5. Click [OK].

You are returned to the main window.

Printing a Single Image Side by Side: [Step & Repeat]

Prints a single image (job) side by side on the media. You can also select a part of the image and print it side by side or shift the image in the vertical or horizontal direction.

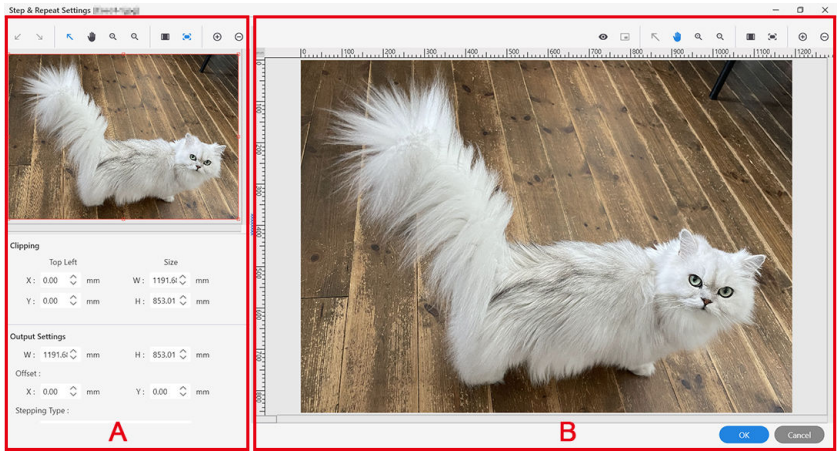


Procedure

1. **Select the job to set.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Step & Repeat] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Step & Repeat]**.
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job toolbar, and then click **[Step & Repeat]**.

   The following window opens and is composed of the layout area (A) and preview area (B).



   - To set the image's area to print, proceed to Step 3.
   - To use the entire image, proceed to Step 4.

3. **Set the image's area to print.**

   There are two ways to configure this setting:

   - **Dragging the mouse in the layout area**

     a. In the layout area, click ↖.

     If the icon is blue, it is already selected.

     b. Point to the small square (the clip point) on the clip line (the red line in the figure).

c. Drag the clip point to set the clip area. The clipped area appears in the layout area side by side.

MEMO

To fine-tune the clip area, use  and  to enlarge the preview image, and then drag the clip point again.

- **Entering the values**
  a. In [**Size**] under [**Clipping**], enter the width and the height of the clip area.
  b. In [**Top Left Position**], enter the location of the upper-left corner of the clip area with the origin at the upper-left corner of the image. The clipped area appears in the layout area side by side.

MEMO

You can also combine both methods to configure the settings. For example, you can set the clip area roughly in the layout area, and then fine-tune the clip area by entering the values.

4. Set the following with [Output Settings].

- Output size ([**W**] and [**H**])

  Make adjustments according to the media size and the number of images to be printed side by side. To print the entire image side by side, set the media size so that it is larger than the output size.
- [**Offset**]

  Adjusts the position of the arranged images in the [X] direction and [Y] direction.
- [**Stepping Type**]
  - [**Normal Repeat**]: Aligns the horizontal and vertical positions of the repeated images.
  - [**Horizontal Repeat**]: Shifts the image horizontally.
  - [**Vertical Repeat**]: Shifts the image vertically.

  When [**Horizontal Repeat**] or [**Vertical Repeat**] is selected, configure [**Ratio**] to decide the image shift ratio.

5. Check how the images are positioned in the layout area.

6. As necessary configure the [Preview Accuracy] setting.

MEMO

If the accuracy is too high, more time may be required for the display.

7. Click [OK].

You are returned to the main window.

8. Perform printing.

Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Performing Overprinting: [Overprint]

Print in the same location in the following situations.

- You want to increase the white density when printing using white ink for the undercoat.
- You want to print thick layers of gloss when printing using gloss ink.
- If you want to increase the CMYK density when printing on decorative lights or billboards.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click ⚙ for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Quality].**
3. **Click ▸ next to [Details].**
4. **Select the [Ignore Default Settings] checkbox.**
5. **Set the [Overprint] count.**
6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Printing Specific Layers

Printing Specific Layers of the Print Data

For print data in PDF format with a layered structure (version 1.5 or later), each layer can be separately set to be printed or not printed. When creating the print data with design software, create multiple layers in advance. Doing so will allow setting of whether or not to print a white plate for each media color, and separate the cutting lines by layer and set whether or not to perform cutting.

The following is an example showing print data with five layers. By combining layers, a variety of printing is possible depending on the printer and ink type.



Layer	Contents	Image
1	**Cutting line** This is used when cutting media with a printer that includes a cutting function.	
2	**Gloss** This is used with a printer that includes gloss. It is used with gloss finish: [**GlossVarnish**], matte finish: [**MatteVarnish**], embossing: [**Embossing**], and other printing.	
3	**CMYK** Prints using CMYK ink.	

Layer	Contents	Image
4	**White** This is used with a printer that includes white. It is used to produce the original CMYK color that is unaffected by the color of the media.	
5	**Primer** This is used with a printer that includes primer. It improves ink adhesion onto the media (object being printed on).	

Step 1: Creating Print Data

When creating a spot color layer, refer to the following to create the spot color layer on a layer other than a CMYK layer.

P. 250 Printing Using White Ink/Gloss Ink/Primer/Metallic Silver Ink/Structural Ink

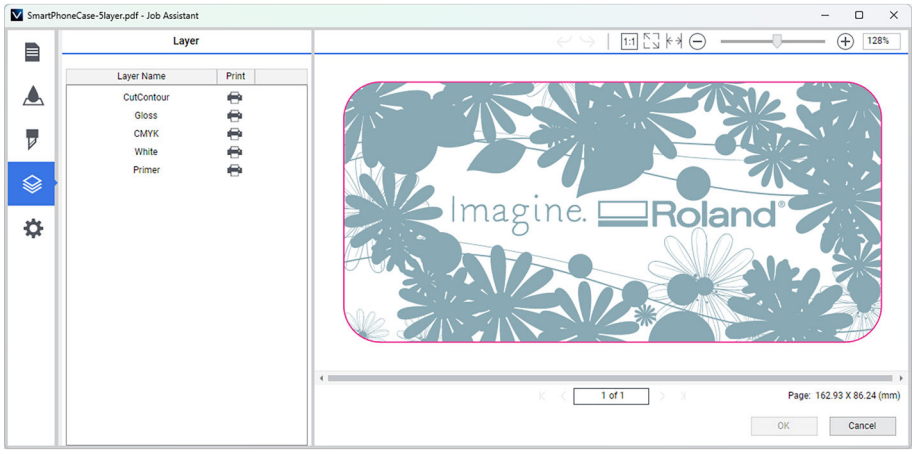
When creating a cutting layer, refer to the First Step Guide to create the cutting layer on a layer other than a CMYK layer.

IMPORTANT

- Locked layers in the print data will be printed. There is no way to change the settings to prevent the layers from being printed.
- You can only change whether to print each layer for PDF-format print data.

Step 2: Printing Specific Layers

Specify the layers to print in the [**Job Assistant**] window and perform printing.



Procedure

1. **Add the created print data to the job list.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to display the [Job Assistant] window.**
   - Right-click on an added job and click [**Edit Design**]>[**Job Assistant**].
   - With an added job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Job Assistant**].

3. **Click** .

   The name of the layer in the print data is displayed in [**Layer**], and an image of the top layer is displayed in the preview window.

4. **Click the icon to the right of a layer that will not be printed.**

   The icon will be displayed with shading ( ), and the layer will not be printed.

5. **Click [OK].**

6. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**

   The [**Job Assistant**] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

7. **Configure the printing settings according to each layer to be printed.**

8. **Perform printing.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Printing That Combines Data Files and Templates: [Variable Data]

What Is Variable Printing?

Variable printing is printing which replaces a portion of the printing area such as characters and images, for each printing. Applications include the printing of employee ID cards where the name, department, and photograph differ; tickets with consecutive numbers, and postcard addressee information.

In order to perform variable printing, you will need the following files:

- Background data
- Data file for specifying the text or images to print
- Image files if you want to print images.

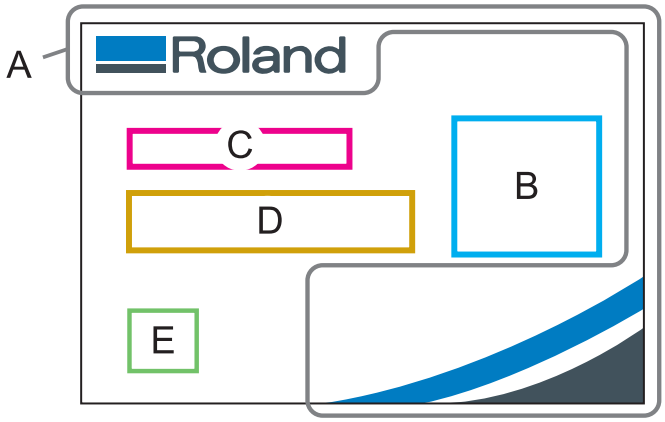
As an example, this section introduces how to create employee ID cards using a flatbed printer.

MEMO

You can also use illustration software for Creating Templates with Illustration Software(P. 132), but this requires tasks such as setting the layout and preparing barcodes in advance.

1. Creating a Template in VersaWorks

Create a template in VersaWorks that specifies the variable field.



A	Background image: Image data of company logo, design, etc. Data should be created in advance. (Supported file types: .png, .jpeg, .tiff, .eps, .pdf, .ps)
B	Variable field: Specify the position of the headshot. [**Type**]: [**Image**], Area name: Photo
C	Variable field: Specify the position of the department name. [**Type**]: [**Text**], Area name: Department
D	Variable field: Specify the position of the name. [**Type**]: [**Text**], Area name: Name
E	Variable field: Specify the position of the QR code of the employee number. [**Type**]: [**Barcode**], Area name: QR code

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Variable Data Template Management].**
2. **Click [>] to the right of [Variable Data Field Template].**
   The [**Variable Data Field Template Management**] window appears.

3. Click .

4. **Enter the template name and click [OK].**

The [**Variable Data Field Template Settings [*]**] window appears.

5. **Set the background image.**

(1) **Click [Import Image].**

(2) **Select the background image created in advance and click [OK].**

The selected background image will be displayed on the [**Variable Data Field Template Settings [*]**] window.

6. **Set the variable field.**

(1) **Click** .

The [**Create New Data**] window appears.

(2) **Enter the name of the variable field for the headshot.**

Enter [**Photo**] here.

(3) **Click [OK].**

A frame with the area name appears on the preview window.

(4) **Select [Image] for [Type].**

(5) **Drag the frame with the area name for rough placement.**

(6) **Register and arrange the area name and type for Department, Name, and Barcode in the same way.**

(7) **Click [OK].**

The created template will be added to the [**Template List**].

7. **Click [< Back].**

You are returned to the [**Variable Data Template Management**] window.

2. Adding the Template to the Job List

Procedure

1. Click [>] on the right side of [Export Template] in the [Variable Data Template Management] window.
2. Select the area template to output from those where [Variable Data Field Template] is [Attributes].
3. Specify the [Printer Nickname] and [Target Queue].
4. Click [OK].
   The [**Variable Data Field Template**] will be added to the specified [**Queue**].
5. Click [Cancel].
   You are returned to the [**Variable Data Template Management**] window.
6. Close the [Variable Data Template Management] window.

3. Creating a Data File and Importing to VersaWorks

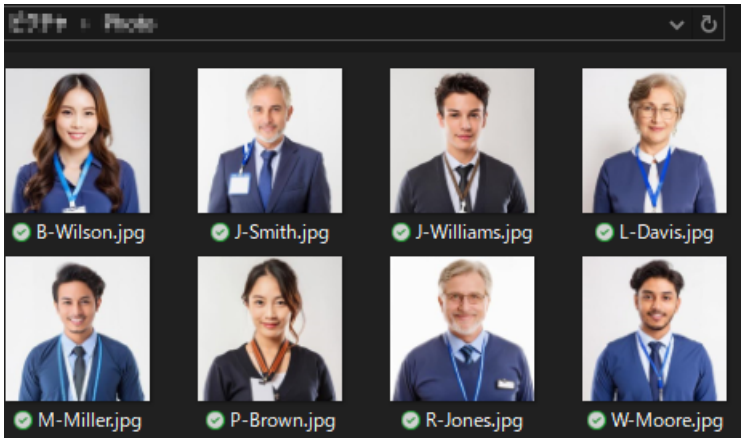
Prepare an image file for printing to a variable field. Export the variable field data created with the variable field template as a data file, edit the data using spreadsheet software, and then import it. You can also edit the data file in VersaWorks without exporting/importing.

P. 135 Creating, Editing, and Exporting a Data File

Data file

A	B	C	D
VDP_Department	VDP_Name	VDP_Photo	VDP_Qrcode
General Affairs Department	J Smith	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥J-Smith.jpg	1000251
Public Relations Department	M Johnson	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥M-Johnson.jpg	1003845
Financial Department	J Williams	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥J-Williams.jpg	1010039
Sales Department	P Brown	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥P-Brown.jpg	1023782
Marketing Department	R Jones	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥R-Jones.jpg	1006935
Development Department	L Davis	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥L-Davis.jpg	1035890
Quality Control Department	M Miller	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥M-Miller.jpg	1044621
Procurement Department	B Wilson	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥B-Wilson.jpg	1009255
Production Engineering Department	W Moore	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥W-Moore.jpg	1070019

Image file



Procedure

1. **Open the [Settings] window for the job added in 2. Adding the Template to the Job List(P. 122).**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click ⚙.

2. **Click [Variable Data].**

3. **Click ⬇.**

   The **[Save As]** window appears.

4. **Enter the desired name.**

   The saved file formats are the following: CSV file (comma-delimited) (.csv), Text file (tab-delimited) (.txt), Text file (space-delimited) (.prn), or XML file (.xml). The method of selecting the file format varies depending on the OS.
   - Windows: Select a saved file format from the File Type list.
   - Mac: The selected file format is included in the file name.

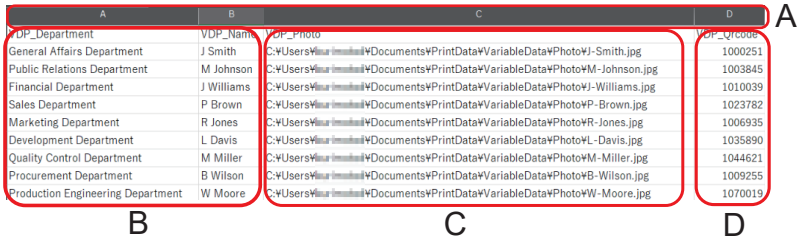
5. **Save the employee name image files to the desired folder.**

Save image files in file formats that can be directly opened in VersaWorks (TIFF (LZW-compressed or uncompressed), EPS, JPEG, PDF, PostScript, or PNG).

6. **Open and edit the saved data file.**

This is an example of editing a CSV file.

The variable field names are already entered in the first row. Enter the characters listed (B), the absolute path (C) of the image files that were saved in Step 5, and the employee number (D) in each variable field, and save.



A	B	C	D
VDP_Department	VDP_Name	VDP_Photo	VDP_Qrcode
General Affairs Department	J Smith	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥J-Smith.jpg	1000251
Public Relations Department	M Johnson	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥M-Johnson.jpg	1003845
Financial Department	J Williams	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥J-Williams.jpg	1010039
Sales Department	P Brown	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥P-Brown.jpg	1023782
Marketing Department	R Jones	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥R-Jones.jpg	1006935
Development Department	L Davis	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥L-Davis.jpg	1035890
Quality Control Department	M Miller	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥M-Miller.jpg	1044621
Procurement Department	B Wilson	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥B-Wilson.jpg	1009255
Production Engineering Department	W Moore	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Documents¥PrintData¥VariableData¥Photo¥W-Moore.jpg	1070019

7. **Click in the window shown in Step 3.**

The window for selecting the file appears.

8. **Select the edited/saved data file and click [Open].**

The edited content is reflected in VersaWorks.

9. **Click on the blank row "1" and click .**

Blank rows are deleted.

Next, configure the variable printing settings.

4. Configuring the Variable Printing Settings

Configure the size, color, font, etc. of the variable fields.

Procedure

1. **Select the field to be configured.**

- **When applying the same settings to all data**

  Select the first row (the field name) in the list. The settings will be applied to all the data.

	Department	Name	Photo
1	General Affai...	J Smith	C:\Users\k...
2	Public Relatio...	M Johnson	C:\Users\k...
3	Financial Dep...	J Williams	C:\Users\k...

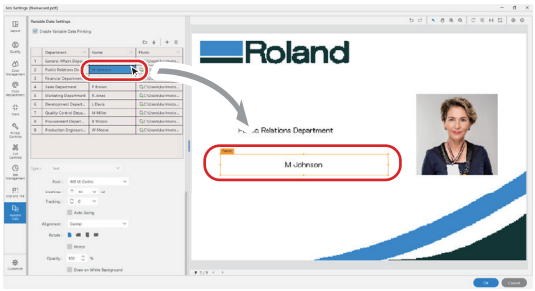
- **When applying the settings only to specific data**

  Select the cell to configure.

	Department	Name	Photo
1	General Affai...	J Smith	C:\Users\k...
2	Public Relatio...	M Johnson	C:\Users\k...
3	Financial Dep...	J Williams	C:\Users\k...

MEMO

The selected column or cell is displayed in the layout area with a border line and field name.



2. **Set the details of [Text].**

- **[Font]**

  Selects the font type.

- **[FontSize]**

  Sets the font size.

- **[Tracking]**

  Sets the spacing between two characters. Set this to 100 to make the spacing one-character wide.

- **[Auto Sizing]**

Select this checkbox to automatically adjust the font size to fit the text in the variable field when the text is larger than the variable field.

- **[Alignment]**

  Sets the alignment of the text in the variable field.
- **[Rotate]**

  Rotates the text in the variable field in units of 90 degrees.
- **[Mirror]**

  Horizontally mirrors the text in the variable field.
- **[Opacity]**

  Sets the opacity of the entire variable field. Set this to 0% to make the target transparent.
- **[Draw on White Background]**

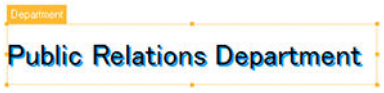
  Select this checkbox to print the background object on top when the background object and the variable field overlap.
- **[Effect]**

  : Italic, : Bold, : Underline, : Shadow, : Outline can be set.
- **[Offset]**

  When (shadow) is selected in **[Effect]**: Sets the shadow offset widths as percentages.

MEMO

Example: Offset: 10% (blue shadow)

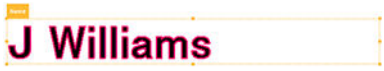


- **[Stroke]**

  When (outline) is selected in **[Effect]**: Sets the stroke widths of outlines in points.

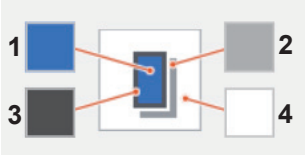
MEMO

Example: Stroke width: 1 pt (red outline)



- **[Color]**

  Set the text (1), shadow (2), outline (3) and variable field color (4).



Click the square to display the **[Color Settings]** window.

Select **[RGB]**, **[CMYK]**, or **[Transparent]** for **[ColorSpace]**. **[White]** can be specified for character and variable field colors. When **[RGB]** or **[CMYK]** is selected, use the slider bar or enter the value to set each color value.

- **[Field Special Color Plate Generation]**

  To generate spot color plates for an area, select **[Print Area (Color-Based)]** or **[Entire Field]** for **[Generated Pattern]** and set **[Density]**.

3. **Set the details of [Image].**

- **[Fit]**

  Sets whether to fit the image in the variable field. Set one of the following for the original image (1).

  - **[None]** (2): Places the original image without resizing.
  - **[Fit to Fields]** (3): Changes the size of the image to fit in the variable field. The horizontal to vertical ratio is not maintained.
  - **[Fit proportionally]** (4): Changes the size of the image proportionally to fit either in the height or width of the variable field.



- **[Alignment]**

  Selects the alignment of the image in the variable field.
- **[Rotate]**

  Rotates the image in the variable field in units of 90 degrees.
- **[Mirror]**

  Horizontally mirrors the image in the variable field.
- **[Opacity]**

  Sets the opacity of the image. Set this to 0% to make the target transparent.
- **[Draw on White Background]**

  Select this checkbox to print the background object on top when the background object and the variable field overlap.
- **[Color]**

  Sets the background color inside the variable field.

  Select **[RGB]**, **[CMYK]**, **[Transparent]**, or **[White]** for **[ColorSpace]**. When **[RGB]** or **[CMYK]** is selected, use the slider bar or enter the value to set each color value.
- **[Field Special Color Plate Generation]**

  To generate spot color plates for an area, select **[Print Area (Color-Based)]** or **[Entire Field]** for **[Generated Pattern]** and set **[Density]**.

4. **Set the details of [Barcode].**

- **[Code Type]**

  Select the barcode type from **[EAN-13]**, **[UPC-A]**, or **[QR Code]**.
- **[Rotate]**

  Rotates the barcode in the variable field in units of 90 degrees.
- **[Mirror]**

  Horizontally mirrors the barcode in the variable field.
- **[Error Correction Level]**

Select the correction level to ensure the QR code can be read correctly even if part of the code is dirty or missing. The percentage of missing data that can be recovered increases in the order of L, M, Q, and H, but the data size also increases.

- [**Field Special Color Plate Generation**]

  To generate spot color plates for an area, select [**Print Area (Color-Based)**] or [**Entire Field**] for [**Generated Pattern**] and set [**Density**].

5. **As necessary, adjust the size and position of the variable field.**

(1) **Select the field to change.**

- **Applying the same changes to all data**

  Select the first row (the field name) in the list. The changes are applied to all data.

- **Changing only specific data**

  Select the cell to change.

(2) **Change the field.**

- Changing with [**Field Settings**]

  Use [**X**] and [**Y**] to change the field position. Specifically, set the distance between the top left corner of the job and the top left corner of the variable field.

  Use [**W**] and [**H**] to set the variable field size.

- **Changing in the layout area**

  Move the pointer to the selected area, then drag to move it. Move the pointer to the square on the frame of the selected area, and drag the square to adjust the size of the variable field.

MEMO

- To undo or redo operations, use  or  (respectively).
- Click [**Reset**] with a variable field selected to revert any changes made to the field (to its size or position) to the original settings.
- When [**Show All Variable Data Fields**] is selected, the border lines and variable names for all set variable fields are displayed in the layout area.
- The data's cell color changes if the attribute setting differs from that of the other data.

6. **Configure other [Settings] as necessary.**

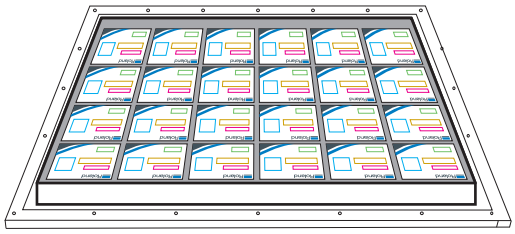
Example

- [**Layout**]>[**Print Properties**]>[**Orientation**]

Next, set the layout.

5. Setting the Layout for Variable Printing

In this example, the layout is set to arrange and print employee ID cards on a flatbed printer.



Procedure

1. Click [Layout].

2. Set the layout for the employee ID cards.
   - [**Position**]: [X] and [Y]

     The job is moved by the specified offset in relation to the job list layout area window's upper left corner (lower right of set up media).
   - [**Print Properties**]: [**Tile Spacing**]

     Specify the spacing between cards. Select [**Equal X and Y Spacing**], [**Separate X and Y Spacing**], or [**Grid Spacing**], and then specify the [**Spacing**], [**Y**], and [**X**]. When using a jig, specify the spacing according to the jig.

3. Click [OK].

   The configured layout is reflected in the preview area of the main window.

6. Performing Printing

Follow the procedure below to start variable printing.

Procedure

1. **Select the job from the job list.**
2. **Perform printing.**
   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Creating a Layout Template in VersaWorks

When entering a data file in VersaWorks, create a layout template that specifies placement for the previously created [**Variable Data Field Template**].

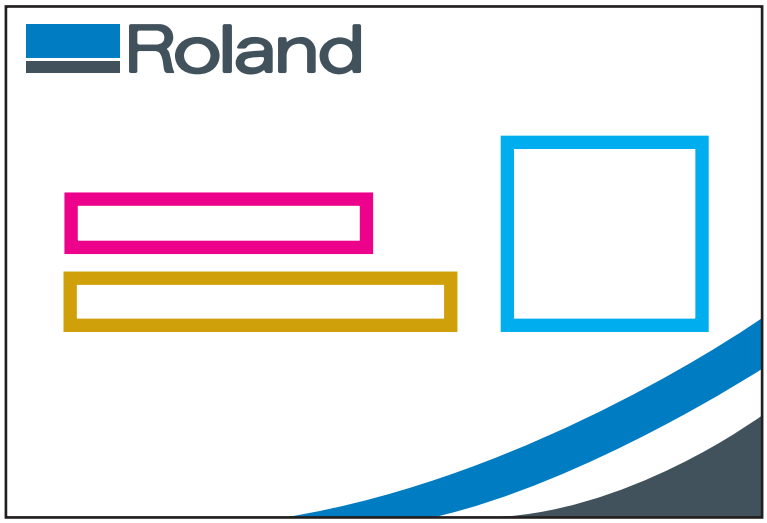
Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Variable Data Template Management].**
2. **Click [>] to the right of [Variable Data Layout Template].**
   The [**Variable Data Layout Template Management**] window appears.
3. **Click**  **.**
4. **From the [Variable Data Field Template] field, select the variable field template for which to set the layout.**
5. **Enter the variable layout template name and click [OK].**
6. **Edit the variable layout template.**
   - [**Position**]: [X] and [Y]
     The job is moved by the specified offset in relation to the job list layout area window's upper left corner (lower right of set up media).
   - [**Number of Tiles**]: [**Horizontal**] and [**Vertical**]
     The layout is created with the specified number.
   - [**Tile Spacing**]
     - [**Equal X and Y Spacing**]
       Specifies the [**Spacing**] from the adjacent image.
     - [**Separate X and Y Spacing**]
       Specifies the spacing from the adjacent image.
     - [**Grid Spacing**]
       Specify the value of the image size plus the spacing from the adjacent image.
7. **Click [OK].**
   The created template will be added to the [**Variable Data Layout Template Management**] window.
8. **Click [< Back].**
   The [**Variable Data Layout Template Management**] window closes.
9. **Close the [Variable Data Template Management] window.**

Creating Templates with Illustration Software

Use illustration software and create a template for variable printing.

Employee ID template



IMPORTANT

In cases such as when printing on transparent media, a white plate is not printed in the variable fields even when a white plate is added to the template. When printing a white plate in a variable field, create a template in VersaWorks, then refer to 4. Configuring the Variable Printing Settings(P. 125) to specify the white plate.

Procedure

1. **Start the illustration software and create a new file.**

2. **Decide the fields where variable printing will be performed (fields in which different text and images are printed).**

   MEMO

   Up to 200 variable fields can be created for one template.

3. **Create a [Spot Color] with the name VDP_(variable field name) in the same number as the number of variable fields.**

   For example, when creating three variable fields for "Department," "Name," and "Photo," create [**Spot Color**] with the names [**VDP_Department**], [**VDP_Name**], and [**VDP_Photo**]. For the method of creating a [**Spot Color**], see the instruction manual of the illustration software you are using.

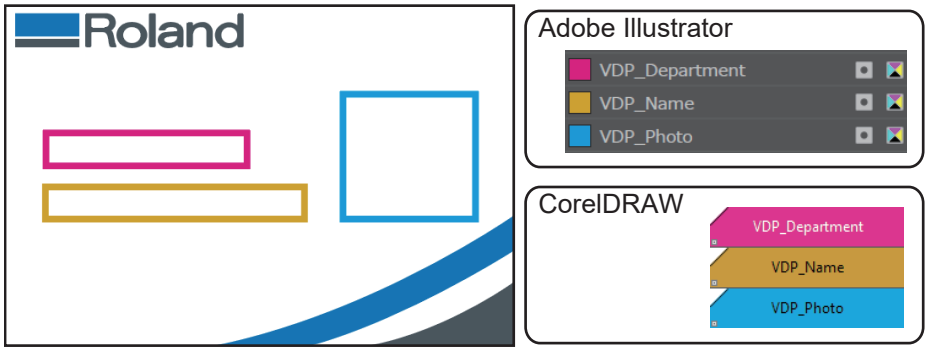
   IMPORTANT

   Be sure to observe the following points when creating a [**Spot Color**]. If the spot color names are incorrect, VersaWorks will not recognize the variable fields.

   - Enter "VDP" in all capital letters.
   - Do not omit the "_" (underscore)

4. **Using the created [Spot Color], draw rectangular shapes (rectangles or squares) for the variable fields.**

These rectangular shapes will be recognized as variable fields by VersaWorks. Fields with non-rectangular shapes (such as circles and trapezoids) will not be recognized as variable fields by VersaWorks.



5. **Save the template in PDF, EPS, or PS format.**

Editing a Data File

After loading a data file into VersaWorks, you can change text, add data, and do other editing.

To edit, use the list in [**Variable Data**]>[**Variable Data Settings**] under [**Settings**], and edit as shown below.

- **Changing text or images**

  Double-click the cell that you want to change in order to enter the text. On fields with the [**Image**] attribute, you can right-click and select [**Browse**] to display the [**Open**] window and change the image file.

- **Adding data**

  Click + to add a new row at the bottom of the list. Select each cell and enter the text or specify the image file.

- **Deleting data**

  Click the number of the data to be deleted, and then click  .

- **Saving the data file**

  Click  . Save in one of the following formats: CSV file (comma-delimited) (.csv), Text file (tab-delimited) (.txt), Text file (space-delimited) (.prn), or XML file (.xml).

MEMO

The data's cell color changes if the setting differs from that of the other data.

Creating, Editing, and Exporting a Data File

When a template is added to the job list, the data can be edited in VersaWorks without the use of spreadsheet software. When the amount of editing is large, it is possible to export the data file and edit it with editing software, then import it. If a data file that was created with spreadsheet software cannot be successfully loaded into VersaWorks, then creating the data file with VersaWorks, and exporting and editing it before loading it, will facilitate loading.

Procedure

Creating and editing a data file

1. **Add a template file to the job list.**

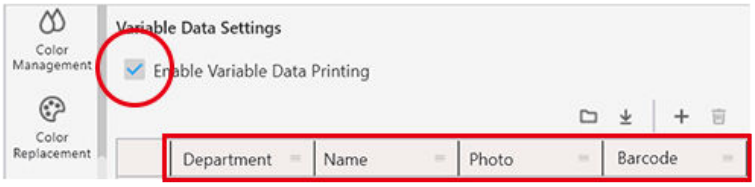
   Check that is displayed for **[Document Information]**>**[Special Items]** in the job overview area.

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
   - With a job selected, click on the left side of the job tool area, and then click .

3. **Click [Variable Data].**

4. **Select the [Enable Variable Data Printing] checkbox.**

   A preview of the template is displayed in the layout area. The variable field name ("VDP_" deleted from the spot color name) specified in Creating Templates with Illustration Software(P. 132) is also displayed in the first line of the **[Variable Data Settings]** list.



5. **Click .**

   A row is added to the table. Clicking multiple times will add a number of rows equal to the number of clicks.

6. **Edit the table and create the data file.**

7. **Click [OK].**

   The edited contents are saved.

Exporting and editing a data file

8. **When the amount of editing is large, click .**

The [**Save As**] screen appears.

9. **Enter the desired name.**

The saved file formats are the following: CSV file (comma-delimited) (.csv), Text file (tab-delimited) (.txt), Text file (space-delimited) (.prn), or XML file (.xml). The method of selecting the file format varies depending on the OS.

- Windows: Select a saved file format from the File Type list.
- Mac: The selected file format is included in the file name.

10. **Open and edit the saved data file.**

Use software suitable for file editing, and edit and save the file.

Importing a data file

11. **Click  in the window shown in Step 4.**

The window for selecting the file appears.

12. **Select the data file that was saved in Step 7 and click [Open].**

The contents of the edited data file are displayed in the table.

Printing Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other

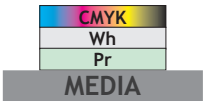
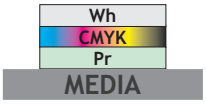
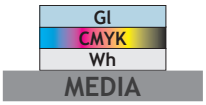
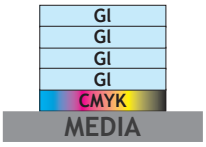
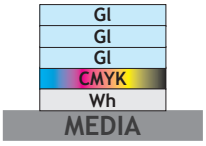
Printing Multiple Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other

A layered job is one in which multiple jobs are layered on top of each other. With a layered job, multiple jobs can be layered and printed with a single printing operation.

Two methods are available with layered jobs: "pull-back printing," in which the media is pulled back and printed on, and "one pass multilayer printing," which prints on all layers together. One pass multilayer printing may result in less printing misalignment than pullback printing.

Two types of one pass multilayer printing are available. In one type, the three-layer mode is selected with **[Quality]**>**[Quality Settings]**>**[Mode]** for printing (2. B: Performing One Pass Multilayer Printing (Three-layer Mode)(P. 140)). In the other type, the advanced settings are configured with **[Custom Layer Mode]** for printing (2. C: Performing One Pass Multilayer Printing (Two- to Five-layer Custom Mode)(P. 141)).

Layered job usage examples

	When you want to, for example, print on transparent film and express vibrant images using CMYK from the print surface and from the surface opposite the printed surface. The printing on the back may show through, so it is a good idea to use the same image.
	When you want to, for example, improve the adhesion of ink to media that peels off easily and express vibrant images using CMYK on a base of white ink
	When you want to, for example, improve the adhesion of ink to media that peels off easily, express vibrant images using CMYK on a base of white ink, and display the images from the surface opposite the printed surface (the transparent surface)
	When you want to, for example, print images on a base of white ink, eliminate the effect of the media's color, and add textures
	When you want to, for example, print on transparent film and express vibrant images using CMYK from the print surface and from the surface opposite the printed surface. The printing on the back will not show through, so use this method with images having directionality such as completely different images or text.
	When you want to, for example, express more three-dimensional textures
	When you want to, for example, print images on a base of white ink, eliminate the effect of the media's color, and add more three-dimensional textures

However, one pass multilayer printing may not be possible depending on the model you are using or the job.

1. Overlapping Multiple Jobs to Create a Single Job

Select multiple jobs from the job list and create a layered job.

MEMO

Printing and cutting layered jobs

- The only cutting lines that are enabled are those on the top layer.
- When creating cutting lines in VersaWorks, add them to the top layer.
- When a layer job is generated, [**Cut Controls**]>[**Operation Mode**] is set to [**Print Only**].

Procedure

1. **Select multiple jobs from the job list.**

   The method for selecting multiple jobs depends on the OS.

   MEMO

   In a layered job, the layers are overlaid in the order they are selected. To specify the layer position, select the jobs in order from the bottom layer.

2. **A layered job can be generated by either of the following methods.**

   - Right-click and click [**Compile Jobs**]>[**Generate Layered Job**].
   - Click ⌄ on the right side of the job tool area, and then click [**Generate Layered Job**].

- When performing pullback printing, proceed to 2. A: Performing Pullback Printing(P. 139).
- When performing one pass multilayer printing, proceed to 2. B: Performing One Pass Multilayer Printing (Three-layer Mode)(P. 140) or 2. C: Performing One Pass Multilayer Printing (Two- to Five-layer Custom Mode)(P. 141).

2. A: Performing Pullback Printing

Pullback and printing are performed for each job in the job number sequence.

Procedure

1. **Select the layered job.**
2. **Perform printing.**
   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

2. B: Performing One Pass Multilayer Printing (Three-layer Mode)

With some models, one pass multilayer printing is possible in a mode with three layers selected. If [**Unsupported Model**] is not displayed on the [**Layer**] tab under [**Job Settings [Layered Job]**], you can use this function.

Perform pullback printing or one pass multilayer printing in two- to five-layer custom mode for layered jobs other than those listed below.

- [**CMYK -> Wh -> CMYK**]
- [**Pr -> Wh -> CMYK**]
- [**Pr -> CMYK -> Wh**]
- [**Wh -> CMYK -> Gl**]

MEMO

You can print marks and job information on layered jobs when the [One Pass Multilayer Printing] checkbox is selected.

- Marks are only added when the job on each layer has the same size, position, and orientation.
- Crop marks are added to the [**Entire Area**].

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to display [Job Settings [Layered Job]].**
   - Double-click the layered job.
   - Right-click a layer job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click  [**Settings**].

   If there is a layer that you want to hide in the [**Layers**], clear the [**Layers**] checkbox.

2. **Select the [One Pass Multilayer Printing] checkbox.**

   The checkbox will be selected if the data can be used for one pass multilayer printing. [**Current Layer Count**] and [**Number of Layers Possible for One Pass Multilayer Printing**] are displayed if the data cannot be used for one pass multilayer printing.

3. **The message [The layered job will be reconfigured to change the printing method. Do you want to continue?] appears. Click [Yes].**

   The [**Settings**] window closes. After the job is reconfigured, the [**Settings**] window appears again.

4. **Select items such as [Media Name], [Print Quality], and [Mode] from [Quality]>[Quality Settings].**

5. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window.

6. **Perform printing.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

2. C: Performing One Pass Multilayer Printing (Two- to Five-layer Custom Mode)

With some models, one pass multilayer printing of two to five layers is possible. If [**Unsupported Model**] is not displayed on the [**Layer**] tab under [**Job Settings [Layered Job]**], you can use this function.

Example of printing five layers



Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to display [Job Settings [Layered Job]].**
   - Double-click the layered job.
   - Right-click a layer job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

   To check the image in the preview window, clear the checkboxes on the upper layers.

2. **Select the [One Pass Multilayer Printing] checkbox.**

3. **The message [The layered job will be reconfigured to change the printing method. Do you want to continue?] appears. Click [Yes].**

   The [**Job Settings [Layered Job]**] window closes. After the job is reconfigured, the [**Job Settings [Layered Job]**] window appears again.

4. **Under [Quality]>[Quality Settings]>[Mode], click [Edit].**

5. **Set the order of the layers.**

   Select the layer to change, and then click ↑ or ↓.

   MEMO

   You can also set the mode of each layer, and then switch the image of each layer at a later time. In this situation, the mode of each layer is fixed, and only the images are switched.

6. **Select the mode to print for each layer.**

   Select CMYK, Wh, Gl, or something similar with [**Mode**].

7. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the [**Job Settings [Layered Job]**] screen.

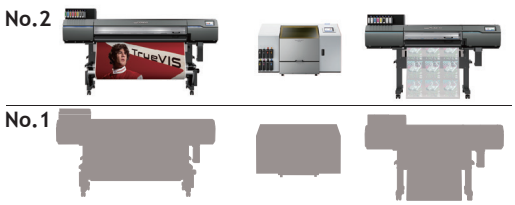
8. **Configure other settings if necessary.**

9. Click [OK].

10. Perform printing.
Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Clipping the Image with a Layered Job and Setting the Number of Copies and the Spacing

When you are using multiple images as a single piece of print data to print a product, you may want to increase the production of a single specific image. Clip the required image with a layered job and set the number of copies and the spacing. You can then perform additional printing of the clipped part to increase the production of the product.

Print data (layered job)	Product
	

A: Product that you want to produce additionally

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to display [Job Settings [Layered Job]].**
   - Double-click the layered job.
   - Right-click a layer job, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
   - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click **[Settings]**.
2. **Click [Clip and Tile].**
3. **Select the [Clip Image] checkbox under [Clipping].**
4. **Set the part to be printed (the clip area).**
   (1) **In the layout area, click .**
   If the icon is blue, it is already selected.
   (2) **Point to the small square (the clip point) on the clip line (the red line in the figure).**
   (3) **Drag the clip point to set the clip area.**
   To fine-tune the clip area, use and to enlarge the preview image, and then drag the clip point again.
5. **Click [Layout].**
6. **Specify [Copy] and [Tile Spacing] in [Print Properties].**
7. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

Composing TIFF Image Print Data: [Compose Job]

Combine two TIFF images (CMYK color and grayscale images of the same size) to compose a single job. The grayscale job can be used as a white plate or gloss plate.

Depending on the model you are using, creation of composed jobs may not be possible.

Step 1: Preparing CMYK and Grayscale Print Data

The example in the following explanation uses print data where photo data was cut out and text was added.

Print data to create





Procedure

1. **Use the design software and create the print data.**

2. **Save the CMYK print data.**
   - Color: CMYK
   - Save format: TIFF

3. **Save the grayscale print data.**
   - Color: Grayscale
   - Save format: TIFF

MEMO

Change only the color and save so that the grayscale print data has the same number of horizontal and vertical pixels as the CMYK data.

Step 2: Composing CMYK Print Data and Grayscale Print Data

Procedure

1. **Add the CMYK and grayscale print data to the job list.**
2. **Select two jobs (CMYK and grayscale).**
3. **Use one of the methods below to create a composed job.**
   - Right-click the two selected multiple jobs, and then click [**Compile Jobs**]>[**Compose Job**].
   - Click ⌄ on the right side of the job tool area, and then click [**Compose Job**].

   A composed job is created from the two selected jobs. The name [**Composite Date-Number**] is assigned to the composed job.

MEMO

When printing a composed job, specify a mode that includes white or gloss with [**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**]>[**Mode**] under [**Settings**].

Composing PDF Print Data: [Compose Job]

Combine two PDF files (CMYK color and single color files of the same size) to compose a single job. You can use the single color print data as a spot color plate.

Depending on the model you are using, creation of composed jobs may not be possible.

Procedure

1. **Add the two PDF files (CMYK and single color) to the job list.**
2. **Select the two jobs (CMYK and single color).**
3. **Use one of the methods below to create a composed job.**
   - Right-click the two selected multiple jobs, and then click [**Compile Jobs**]>[**Compose Job**].
   - Click ⌄ on the right side of the job tool area, and then click [**Compose Job**].

   A composed job is created from the two selected jobs. The name [**Composite Date-Number**] is assigned to the composed job.

MEMO

When printing a composed job, specify a mode that includes a spot color plate with [**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**]>[**Mode**] under [**Settings**].

Printing Using the Rotary Axis Unit

Printing on a Cylindrical Object

The rotary axis unit is used to print on a cylindrical object (media) while it is rotated.
If the media has a small diameter, reduce the number of nozzles (the feed length) to use. Measure the diameter of the media in advance.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Quality].**
3. **Select [Rotary] for [Quality Settings]>[Media Name].**
4. **Click [Printer Controls].**
5. **Use [Rotary Controls] to set the number of nozzles to use in printing.**
   (1) **Click [Automatic Calculation].**
   (2) **Enter the [Media Diameter].**

   The value calculated from the media diameter is displayed next to [**Nozzle Amount to Use in Printing**].
   (3) **Click [Apply].**
   (4) **As necessary, adjust the number of nozzles to use.**

   Reducing the number of nozzles increases the printing quality but also increases the printing time. Increasing the number of nozzles reduces the printing time but affects the printing quality due to issues such as the generation of mist because the printed surface is far away. Consider the printing quality and the printing time while making adjustments.
6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

7. **Perform printing.**
   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Printing Using Structural Ink

Locations that are not printed on with structural ink will expand during heating in the oven after printing. When creating the print data, set the locations that will be printed on with structural ink (locations that will not expand).

MEMO

Change [**Quality**]>[**Structural Ink Settings**] to [**Spot Color**] to switch the locations that will be printed on with structural ink (locations that will not expand), as specified in the print data, to locations that will not be printed on with structural ink (locations that will expand).
The output result will change greatly, so exercise caution with this setting.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Creating print data

The following methods are available for specifying structural ink in the print data.

- **Roland DG Connect Designer**

  You can follow a procedure to create print data that specifies structural ink. You can also shorten the process up to outputting with VersaWorks.

  Connect Designer User's Manual

- **Design software (Adobe Illustrator, CorelDRAW, etc.)**

  Use [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**] to specify structural ink for [**Spot Color**]. You can also use [**Roland Structural Texture System Library**] for the structural ink library to create print data.

  - [**Spot Color**]: Printing Using White Ink/Gloss Ink/Primer/Metallic Silver Ink/Structural Ink(P. 250)
  - Library: Printing Using the Roland Color System Library(P. 242)

- **JobAssistant**

  Add the [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**] spot color plate to the print data. You can duplicate and add existing objects to spot color plates as well as convert these objects. You can also draw simple objects.

  P. 259 Spot Color Plate Generation with [**Job Assistant**]

- **Spot color plate generation function**

  Generate the [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**] spot color plate in the print data. The five patterns that you can generate are [**Print Area (Object-Based)**], [**Print Area (Color-Based)**], [**Outside Print Area (Object-Based)**], [**Outside Print Area (Color-Based)**], and [**Entire Image**].

  P. 255 [**Special Color Plate Generation**] Function ([**Settings**])

Using existing print data

Replace the [**Spot Color**] specified in existing print data with [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**]. You can specify structural ink without correcting the print data.

P. 271 Assigning White/Metallic Silver/Gloss/Primer/Structural to a [**Spot Color**] in Existing Print Data

Configuring Cutting Settings for Landscape Print Data

Separate and print the print data. Then, remove the media and cut it with a cutter made by Fotoba or a similar company. As an example, this section contains the procedure for separating the following print data vertically into three parts and setting the Fotoba cutting marks.



Procedure

1. **Add the print data to the job list.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

3. **Click [Mark].**

4. **Set the following with [Marks].**
   - [**Type**]: [**FOTOBA Cutline Marks**]
   - [**Print Location**]: Select the [**Top**], [**Bottom**], [**Right**], and [**Left**] checkboxes.

5. **Click [Clip and Tile].**

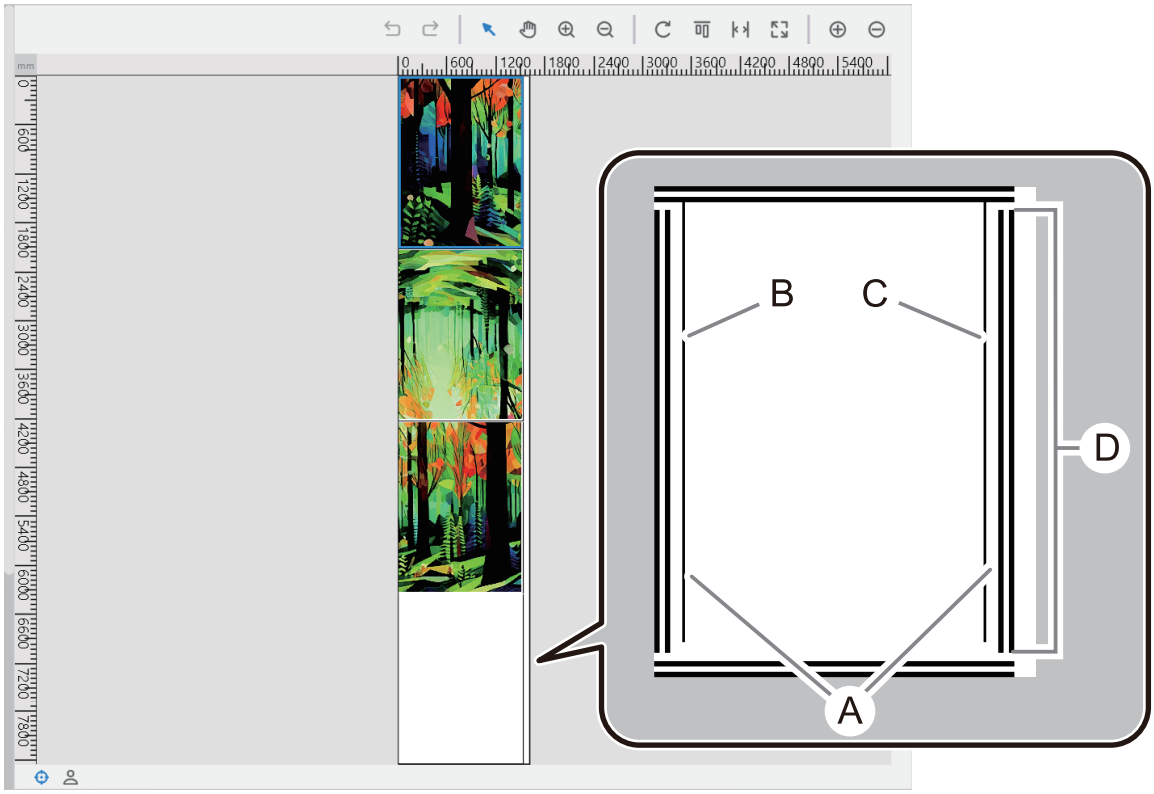
6. **Select [Number of Tiles] for [Tiling], and then configure the following settings.**
   - [**Horizontal**]: 3
   - [**Place alternately**]: Selected

7. **Set the following with [Overlap].**
   - [**Position**]: Turn on Up, Down, Left, and Right.
   - [**Cut Line Length**]: 0

8. **Click [OK].**

You are returned to the main window.

9. **Right-click a job, and then click [Edit Design]>[Generate Cut Position Adjustment Job].**



A	Cutting position adjustment line (line width: 0.1 mm [3.94 mil])
B	Left-side adjustment line (line that does not take overlap into account)
C	Right-side adjustment line (line that does not take overlap into account)
D	The same length as the Fotoba marks

A nested job including the job for cutting position adjustment is created. After printing, load the media on the cutting machine, adjust the cutting positions, and then cut the media.

Gradation Printing

Printing with Smooth Gradations

To print smooth gradations, execute RIP and print in 16 bits. However, if the print data is in TIFF, JPEG, or PNG format, it is not possible to execute RIP in 16 bits. In addition, 16-bit RIP processing requires more time.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] screen appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Quality].**
3. **Select [16-bit] for [Bit Depth] under [RIP Setting].**

   The default value is [**8-bit**].
4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**]. The changes are reflected in the layout area of the main window.

Printing with a Cylindrical Printer

With a cylindrical printer, you can set the printing shape and area in VersaWorks the same as during machine setup.

The flow of this operation is as follows.

1. On the printer, set up the object.
2. In the [**Workpiece Information Management**] window in VersaWorks, register the shape of the object.
3. Add the print data to VersaWorks.
4. With [**Settings**] in VersaWorks, specify and print the shape registered in step 2.

You can also perform the procedure under Specifying the Printing Position in the Rotation Direction(P. 155).

MEMO

Precautions for cylindrical printers

- With [**User View**], the preview image is rotated 90 degrees to the right.
- If the number of output pages or the number of tiles are set to values other than 1, the RIP will fail.

Printing on a Cylindrical Object

On the printer, set up the object.

Procedure

1. Click ☰ (the hamburger menu) in the main window.

2. Click [Workpiece Information Management].

3. Register the shape of the object.

- Cylinder or cone
  a. Click ＋.
  b. Select the shape of the object with [**Dot Shape**].
  c. Specify the printing area.
     - [**Cylindrical**]: [**Diameter**] and [**Length**]
     - For [**Conical**]: [**Upper Diameter**], [**Lower Diameter**], and [**Length**]
  d. Enter the name of the object in [**Name**].
  e. Click [**OK**].
- Irregular shape
  a. [**Update**]: Click ↻ to acquire the workpiece information from the printer.
  b. If necessary, change the [**Name**].
     The name registered on the printer is displayed in the [**Name**] field.
  c. Click [**OK**].

4. Add the print data to the job list.

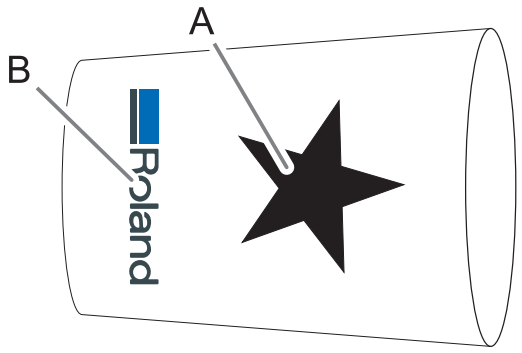
5. Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.

- Double-click the job to set.
- Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
- With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

6. Click [Layout].
7. In [Dot Shape] under [Workpiece Information Settings], select the [Name] you registered in step 3.
8. Configure the advanced settings as necessary.
9. Perform printing.

Specifying the Printing Position in the Rotation Direction

With a cylindrical printer, specify the printing position in the circumference direction. Configure this setting when, for example, you are performing additional printing (B) on an object that already has a reference (A) for printing or the like.



Procedure

Printer Settings

1. **Set up the object to be printed on.**

   In addition to the [**Media Name**], [**Workpiece Type**], and [**Workpiece Information**], set the [**Printing Area and Reference Point**]. For details on this work, see the user's manual of the printer.

VersaWorks Settings

2. **Refer to Printing on a Cylindrical Object(P. 153) to acquire the workpiece information that you have set on the printer.**

3. **Add the print data to the job list.**

4. **Under [Settings], click [Layout].**

5. **From [Dot Shape] under [Workpiece Information Settings], select the name of the acquired workpiece.**

   At this time, the [**Printing Reference Point**] set on the printer appears as a horizontal line in the preview window.

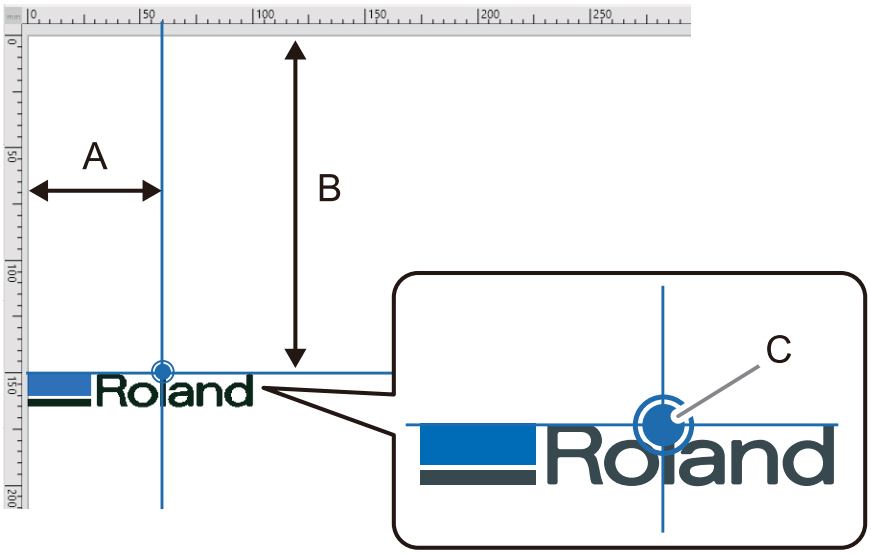
6. **Click [Printer Controls].**

7. **Set the following with [Cylindrical Control].**

   - [**Starting Offset for Printing**]: Specify the offset amount (A) to match with the [**Printing Reference Point**] specified on the printer. This value is displayed as a vertical line in the preview window.

     The [**Printing Reference Height**] (B) indicates the position of the [**Printing Reference Point**].
   - [**Support Line Color**]: Specify the colors of the vertical and horizontal lines and of the double circle.

   The intersection of the two lines [**Starting Offset for Printing**] and [**Printing Reference Height**] is displayed as a double circle (C).



8. **Click [OK].**
   The changes will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.

Media Settings

What Is Media? 158
Media List 158
Registering New Media 160
Step 1: Creating New Media 160
Step 2: Preparing to Create a Profile 161
Step 3: Creating a Profile 163
Step 4: Registering a Profile 164
Step 5: Configuring the Default Printer Control Settings 165
Step 6: Finalizing the Registration of the New Media 167
Using Existing Media 168
Customizing Media 168
Using Media [**Color Settings**] 169
Saving the Media File 171
Using an Existing Media File 172
Importing Media Files into VersaWorks 173
Loading Saved Media Files 174
Deleting the Media 175

What Is Media?

Media refers to general items to be printed on such as roll/sheet media to be printed on and thick objects to be printed on with the flat-bed printer. In VersaWorks, media refers to items to which settings allowing for printing on the above items have been added. Select from [**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**]>[**Media Name**] in [**Queue Properties**] or [**Settings**].

Media List

This is the list of [**Media Name**]. The displayed details vary depending on the model.

Category	Media name	Description
Solvent	[**Generic Vinyl 1**]	This is a profile for general PVC film.
	[**Generic Vinyl 2**]	This is a profile for general PVC film. If printing with [**Generic Vinyl 1**] results in noticeable smudges, use this profile to print.
	[**Generic Banner 1**]	This is a profile for general banner media.
	[**Generic Banner 2**]	This is a profile for general banner media. If printing with [**Generic Banner 1**] results in noticeable smudges, use this profile to print.
	[**Generic Paper**]	This is the profile for general paper media.
	[**Generic Backlit**]	This profile is specialized for decorative lights. Printing is performed with [**Overprint**] set to 2.
	[**Generic Heat Transfer Sheet**]	This is the profile for general heat transfer sheets.
	[**Generic Clear PET Film**]	This is the profile for general transparent PET film.
	[**Generic Clear Vinyl**]	This is the profile for general transparent PVC film.
UV	[**Generic / Generic Sign Production**]	This is a profile used in basic printing.
	[**Generic II / Generic Sign Light**]	This profile uses less ink than general profiles. Reducing the amount of ink used results in a more even print surface.
	[**Generic Sign Quality**]	This is a profile used in basic printing. If [**Generic / Generic Sign Production**] results in noticeable bands on the print surface or similar issues, use this profile to print.
	[**Generic Distance**]	This is the profile to use when the print heads are separated from the target by a long distance.
	[**Generic Label / Text Decoration**]	This profile is specialized for applications such as adding names to labels and text. If you want to print lowercase characters or similar text with greater precision, use this profile.
	[**Generic Backlit**]	This profile is specialized for decorative lights. Printing is performed with [**Overprint**] set to 2.
	[**Generic Decal**]	This profile is used to print on decals.
	[**Primer**]	This setting is used to print with primer.
	[**Special Effect**]	This setting is used to print with gloss ink. You can configure the setting for a gloss finish, matte finish, or something similar.
	[**Rotary**]	This is the profile to use when printing using a rotary axis unit.
	[**** with Special Effects**]	This setting is used to print simultaneously with color ink and gloss ink.
	[**** with Primer**]	This setting is used to print simultaneously with color ink and primer.
DTF	[**Generic Film Dark**]	This is the profile to use when the media to transfer to is a dark color. A heavy white layer is printed, allowing colors to stand out without being affected by the base material.

Category	Media name	Description
	[**Generic Film Light**]	This is the profile to use when the media to transfer to is white (a light color). A light white layer is printed, resulting in reduced ink consumption.
	[**Generic Film Dark 2**]	If printing with [**Generic Film Dark**] results in bands or similar quality issues, use this profile to print.
	[**Generic Film Light 2**]	If printing with [**Generic Film Light**] results in bands or similar quality issues, use this profile to print.
	[**Generic Film CMYK**]	Printing is performed only with CMYK. Therefore, white is not printed.
	[**Generic Film CMYK 2**]	If printing with [**Generic Film CMYK**] results in bands or similar quality issues, use this profile to print.
Cylindrical	[**Generic**]	This is a profile used in basic printing.
	[**Generic Distance**]	This is the profile to use when the print heads are separated from the target by a long distance. If printing with [**Generic**] results in poor quality, such as the printed surface being uneven, use this profile to print.
	[**Generic Distance 2**]	This is the profile to use when the print heads are separated from the target by an even longer distance. If printing with [**Generic Distance**] results in poor quality, use this profile to print.
	[**High Adhesion**]	If you clean the printed item at a high temperature or by using detergent (such as when using a dishwasher), use this profile to print.

Registering New Media

Media settings define the resolution, profile, ink limits, gradation curve values, and other detailed parameters that are used.

The following three methods can be used to create or obtain new media rather than the genuine media that is registered in VersaWorks in advance.

- Creating by replicating genuine media and changing the settings: Refer to Customizing Media(P. 168) for details.
- Obtaining existing media: Refer to Using an Existing Media File(P. 172) for details.
- Creating from a template: Refer to the following procedure to create new media.

Step 1: Creating New Media

Utilize a template and create new media. A measurement instrument and profile creation software will be used at a future process.

Procedure

1. **Select the printer to use, and then click (the hamburger menu).**
2. **Click [Media Explorer].**
3. **Click +.**

   The [**Create New Media**] window appears.
4. **Enter the media name in [Media Name].**
5. **Select the [Template], and then click [OK].**

   The media you created is added to the [**Media Explorer**] window.

MEMO

- Available templates vary by printer. Select the template according to the type of media (such as PVC and banner) to be registered.
- To create new media by using existing media as a template, follow the procedure below.
  1. Select the media to use as the template, and then click .

     The [**Copy Media**] window appears.
  2. Enter the media name, and then click [**OK**].
- You can rename the media later.
  1. Select the media, and then click .

     The [**Change Media Name**] window appears.
  2. Enter the new name for the media, and then click [**OK**].

Step 2: Preparing to Create a Profile

Follow the procedure below to prepare to create a profile that matches the printing quality of the selected media.

Procedure

1. Set the measurement instrument.

Set it to make it ready to perform the measurement.

2. Click for the created media to expand the list, and then select the quality, resolution, and ink mode to use.

- Variable dot modes (modes that use dots of varying sizes) have "(v)" next to their name. Modes without "(v)" next to their name are printed using dots of a fixed size.
- Halftone printing mode is available in some of the modes that use fixed dots (the [**Halftone**] setting becomes [**Angled Screen**]).

MEMO

[Hide Non-recommended Modes] function

In the initial settings, the checkbox for this function is selected, but clear this checkbox to display all the available modes as necessary.

1. Double-click the created media. Alternatively, with the media selected, click .

   The window changes.
2. Click [**Other Controls**] under [**Category**].
3. Unselect the [**Hide Non-recommended Modes**] checkbox.

3. Click or double-click the ink mode to use.

The window changes.

4. Perform [Print Quality].

As necessary, set the [**Halftone**], [**Direction**], [**Head Speed**], [**Feed Speed**], [**Overprint**], and [**Optimizer Level**]. (Also set [**Frequency**], [**Dot Shape**], and [**Angle**] under [**Halftone Options**] if [**Angled Screen**] is selected for the [**Halftone**].)

5. Perform [Calibration Settings].

(1) **Click [Print Chart] under [Calibration Settings] under [Category], and then click [Print].**

Check whether the media loaded in the printer is large enough for the displayed page size.

The following message appears: [**The following job will be printed.Do you want to continue?**]

(2) **Use [Add Job To] to specify the queue folder.**

(3) **Click [OK].**

The swatch used for density measurement is printed.

The swatch pattern varies depending on the selected measurement instrument.

(4) **Click [Measure Chart].**

(5) **Perform color measurement.**

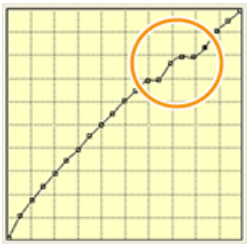
- It may be necessary to perform calibration of the measurement instrument in advance.
- Perform color measurement as directed in the instructions shown on the window.

(6) **Click [Fine Tune and Apply] under [Calibration Settings].**

(7) **Select [Channel], and then check the density curve for each measurement data channel.**

(8) **If the slopes of the density curves are always positive, proceed to Step 6.**

(9) **If the slope of any portion of a density curve is zero or negative as shown in the figure, adjust the curve so that its slope is always positive.**



Click the [**Output**] that you want to adjust, and then input the value to adjust. Or, change the value from ⇕ .

6. **Set the [Total Ink Limit].**

(1) **Click [Print Chart] under [Total Ink Limit], then click [Print].**

The following message appears: [**The following job will be printed.Do you want to continue?**] Check whether the media loaded in the printer is large enough for the displayed page size.

(2) **Specify the queue folder in which to add the job, and then click [OK].**

The ink limit chart is printed.

(3) **Check for oversaturation, bleeding, and ink drying on the printed chart to determine the total ink limit.**

(4) **Click [Set Ink Limit] under [Total Ink Limit], and then enter the total ink limit that you determined in the previous step into [Total Ink]. Or, change the value from ⇕ .**

7. **Click [OK].**

The display of the window changes.

8. **Click [OK].**

A confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to apply the changes.

9. **Click [Yes].**

The settings of the new media are saved.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to click [**Yes**]. Clicking [**No**] closes the window without saving the settings of the new media.

Step 3: Creating a Profile

Use profile creation software and create an ICC profile.

Procedure

1. **Create an ICC profile.**

   For information on how to create profiles and on how to operate the profile creation software, refer to the instruction manual of your software.

2. **Save the created ICC profile to the desired location.**

Step 4: Registering a Profile

Follow the procedure below to register the created profile as the default profile.

Procedure

1. Select the printer to use, and then click (the hamburger menu).
2. Click [Media Explorer].
3. Select the new media you added in Step 1: Creating New Media(P. 160).
4. Click to expand the list, and then select the quality, resolution, and ink mode to use.
5. Click or double-click the ink mode to use.
   The window changes.
6. Click [Select Profile] for [Profile Settings] under [Category].
7. Click ..., and then select the profile you saved in Step 3: Creating a Profile(P. 163).
8. Click [Open].
9. Click [OK].
   The window changes, and the selected profile is applied.

Step 5: Configuring the Default Printer Control Settings

Follow the procedure below if you want to configure the default printer control settings applied when you print or cut the selected media on your printer.

Procedure

1. **Double-click the media. Alternatively, with the media selected, click** .

   The window changes.

2. **Set the [Printer Controls].**

   For the items below, apply the settings that are recommended for the media.

   These settings are applied when you select [**Use Default Media Settings**] with [**Printer Controls**] in the [**Queue Properties**] window or the [**Settings**] window. For information on the setting method, refer to Printer Control Settings(P. 56).

   - [**Feed Calibration Controls**]
     - [**Feed Calibration**]

       Enter the media feed calibration value that is appropriate for the selected media. To enter this value, the feed calibration value must be measured on the printer. For information on how to measure the feed calibration, refer to the instruction manual of your printer.
     - [**Change Calibration For All Models**]

       Only when there are series models (for example, the SOLJET PRO2V series), you can change the feed calibration value when using the selected media with another series model.
   - [**Other Controls**]
     - [**Vacuum Power**]

       Sets the intensity of the vacuum that holds the media flat on the platen.
     - [**Dry Time**]

       Sets the time (in minutes) to wait before printing the next page or cutting.
     - [**Head Height**]

       Sets the height of the print head.
   - [**Heater Controls**]
     - [**Pre Heater**]
     - [**Print Heater**]
     - [**Dryer**]

       Set the temperature for each type of heater. Clearing these options will set the default settings to off when printing. The devices that can be set vary depending on the printer.

3. **As necessary configure the [Cut Controls] setting.**

   If you want to print and cut or just cut the selected media, click [**Cut Controls**], and then configure the following settings.

   - [**Cut Passes**]

     Enter the number of cutting passes for each cutting line. Increase the value for media that is difficult to cut.
   - [**Speed**]

     Enter the movement speed of the blade (the cutting speed) in cm/s.

- **[Pressure]**

  Enter the blade force in units of gram-force.

- **[Offset]**

  Enter the blade offset value (the offset value from the center of the blade to the tip of the blade) in millimeters.

MEMO

Deselecting **[Enable Cutting]** disables **[Cut Controls]** in the **[Queue Properties]** window and the **[Settings]** window, which makes it impossible to set cutting.

Step 6: Finalizing the Registration of the New Media

After you have configured all the settings, save the settings and exit.

Procedure

1. **Click [OK].**
   The window changes to [**Media Explorer**].

2. **Click [OK].**
   A confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to apply the changes.

3. **Click [Yes].**
   The changed media settings are saved.

   IMPORTANT

   Be sure to click [**Yes**]. Clicking [**No**] closes the window without saving the changes to the media settings.

The registered new media can now be selected from [**Settings**] under [**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**]>[**Media Name**].

Using Existing Media

Customizing Media

In VersaWorks, various media settings (print quality for each mode, total number of paths, dot types, total ink amount, printer profiles, etc.) are registered for each printer. You can create custom media by editing these settings after duplicating one of the existing types of media. You can edit new or existing media without duplicating it if [**Attribute**] is set to [**User Defined**] in the [**Media Explorer**] window for the media.

Procedure

1. **Select the printer to use, and then click (the hamburger menu).**
2. **Click [Media Explorer].**
3. **Select the media name to edit.**

   If [**Attribute**] is set to [**Genuine**], use the following procedure to duplicate the media.

   (1) **Select the media to duplicate.**

   (2) **Click** .

   The [**Copy Media**] window appears.

   (3) **Enter the desired media name, and then click [OK].**

   The media is duplicated. The changed media name is displayed for [**Media Name**].
4. **Click to expand the list, and then select the quality, resolution, and ink mode to use.**
5. **Click or double-click the ink mode to edit.**
6. **Change the [Print Quality] or [Quality Settings] ([Calibration Settings], [Total Ink Limit], and [Profile Settings]).**

   For modes with three layers for layered jobs, click [**Fine Tune and Apply**], [**Set Ink Limit**], or [**Select Profile**] to enable selection of [**Layer**]. Select a layer, and then edit it. However, [**Print Quality**] is a common setting for the three layers.
7. **Click [OK].**

   The window changes.
8. **In the [Media Explorer] window, click [OK] again.**

   A window appears to confirm that you want to apply the changes. To do so, click [**Yes**].

   The customized media is saved.

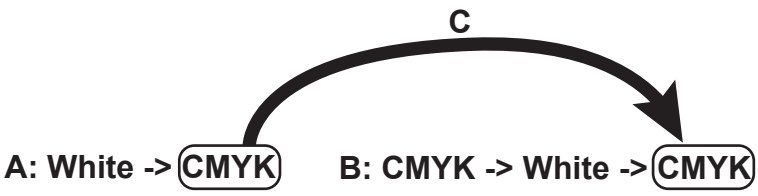
The customized media can now be selected from [**Settings**] under [**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**]>[**Media Name**].

Using Media [Color Settings]

You can export the [**Color Settings**] of existing media to import these settings for use in editable media. The items that can be used are as follows.

- [**Calibration Settings**]>[**Fine Tune and Apply**]: [**Single Color Limit**] and [**Output**]
- [**Total Ink Limit**]>[**Set Ink Limit**]: [**Total Ink Limit**]
- [**Profile Settings**]>[**Select Profile**]: [**Printer Profile**]

As an example, this section provides the procedure for reusing the CMYK [**Color Settings**] of an existing piece of media (Mode: White -> CMYK) for the CMYK of the third layer of a piece of layering media (Mode: CMYK -> White -> CMYK).



A	Reused media: Mode: White -> CMYK*1
B	Media to which reused settings will be applied: Mode: CMYK -> White -> CMYK
C	Reused items: [**Calibration Settings**], [**Total Ink Limit**], and [**Profile Settings**] in [**Quality Settings**]

*1 If the ink mode of the reused media is White -> CMYKOrRe, CMYKOrRe will also be applied to the target media.

Procedure

1. **Select the printer to use, and then click (the hamburger menu).**
2. **Click [Media Explorer].**
3. **Duplicate the existing media (which has Mode: White -> CMYK) to reuse.**
   (1) **Select the media to duplicate.**
   (2) **Click .**
   The [**Copy Media**] window appears.
   (3) **Enter the desired media name, and then click [OK].**
   The media is duplicated. The changed media name is displayed for [**Media Name**].
4. **Click the duplicated media, the print quality to use, and the resolution to expand these items, and then select the ink mode (White -> CMYK) to reuse.**
5. **Click or double-click the ink mode to use.**
   The window changes.
6. **Click .**
   The window for selecting the folder in which to save the file appears. Change the file name and save the file in the desired folder.

MEMO

The file is saved with the .rccs extension.

7. **Click [OK].**

   The window changes.

8. **Click the layering media to which reused settings will be applied, the print quality to use, and the resolution to expand these items, and then select the ink mode (CMYK -> White -> CMYK) to apply.**

9. **Click  or double-click the ink mode to apply.**

   The window changes.

10. **Click [Fine Tune and Apply], [Set Ink Limit], or [Select Profile].**

    [**Layer**] at the top of the window can now be selected.

11. **Select [3.CMYK] from [Layer].**

12. **Click .**

13. **Select the [Color Settings] (.rccs file) that you saved in Step 6, and then click [Open].**

14. **The message [There are profiles that are already installed.Click "Yes" to overwrite the existing profiles.Click "No" to import the media information only.Do you want to continue?] appears. Select [No].**

    The [**Color Settings**] are applied to the third layer of the piece of layering media (Mode: CMYK -> White -> CMYK).

15. **Click [OK].**

    The window changes.

16. **In the [Media Explorer] window, click [OK] again.**

    A window appears to confirm that you want to apply the set contents and carry out initialization. This window confirms that you want to apply the corresponding mode to the selected job.

17. **To apply the set contents, click [Yes].**

    You are returned to the main window.

Saving the Media File

Save the selected media as a Roland media file (rml file).

Procedure

1. **Select the printer to use, and then click (the hamburger menu).**
2. **Click [Media Explorer].**
3. **Select the media to be saved.**
4. **Click .**

   The [**Export Media Info**] window appears with the [**Select**] checkbox for the media to save selected. To save multiple pieces of media, select this checkbox.
5. **Click [Save...].**

   The [**Save As**] window appears.
6. **Enter the file name, and then click [Save...].**

   The selected media is saved as an rml file.

MEMO

If you select the [**Exclude invisible information**] checkbox in the [**Export Media Info**] window, the file will be saved without including the non-recommended mode information.

Using an Existing Media File

This section explains how to use existing media files with VersaWorks. Media files can be either downloaded and imported in VersaWorks or manually imported (for media files obtained separately). For instructions on how to import files manually, refer to Loading Saved Media Files(P. 174).

Importing Media Files into VersaWorks

Download media files and import them into VersaWorks. To perform this operation, verify that the computer on which VersaWorks is installed is connected to the Internet.

The media files will be determined according to the model and ink type. Select the printer in VersaWorks, and then select the media files to be imported.

This operation requires a Roland DG Connect account.

Procedure

1. **Select the printer on which to import media, and then click ☰ (the hamburger menu).**
2. **Click [Media Explorer].**
3. **Click .**
4. **Sign in with your Roland DG Connect account.**
   The [**Download Media**] window appears for the model selected in Step 1.
5. **Select [Ink Type] and [RIP].**
   - [Ink Type]: The ink types for the model selected in Step 1
   - [RIP]: VersaWorks 7.x
6. **Select the media to download the media files.**
7. **Close the window after downloading completes.**
8. **The [This will start the importing of the downloaded media.Do you want to continue?] dialog box is displayed. Click [Yes].**
9. **When the downloaded media files are displayed, click [OK].**
   The media files will be added to the media list in [**Media Explorer**].

Loading Saved Media Files

Load a Roland media file (rml file) or compressed media file (zip file) into the [**Media Explorer**] window.

Procedure

1. **Select the printer on which to load media, and then click ☰ (the hamburger menu).**
2. **Click [Media Explorer].**
3. **Click 🗀.**

   The window for selecting the file appears.
4. **Select the rml file or zip file to be loaded, and then click [Open].**

   The [**Import Media**] window appears.
5. **If the rml file includes the information of multiple media, select the media to be loaded from the list, and then click [OK].**

   The selected media is registered to the [**Media Explorer**] window.
6. **Click [OK].**

   If you click [**Cancel**], the window is closed and the registration of the media is canceled.

   MEMO

   You cannot load media if another media with the same name has already been registered.

Deleting the Media

Delete the selected media from the [**Media Explorer**] window.

Procedure

1. **Select the printer from which to delete media, and then click (the hamburger menu).**
2. **Click [Media Explorer].**
3. **Select the media to delete.**

   MEMO

   You cannot delete media that has [**Genuine**] for [**Attribute**].

4. **Click .**

   A list of media that can be deleted is displayed in the [**Delete Media**] window. The [**Select**] checkbox for the media selected in Step 3 is selected. To delete multiple pieces of media, select their checkboxes.

5. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Delete Media**] window closes.

6. **Click [OK].**
7. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**

   The media is deleted, and you are returned to the main window.

   - Click [**No**] to cancel the deletion of the media and return to the main window.
   - Click [**Cancel**] to close the confirmation window.

Cutting Settings

Configuring the Cutting Conditions 177
Step 1: Performing Test Cutting 177
Step 2: Configuring the Cutting Conditions 179
Changing Cutting Line Colors: Job Assistant 181
Other Cutting 182
Performing Perforated Cutting at Image Boundaries 182
Laminating and Cutting After Printing: Cutting with Crop Marks 184

Configuring the Cutting Conditions

On printers with cutting capabilities, set cutting conditions from VersaWorks.

MEMO

- To enable the changed settings, you have to set the printer to give priority to the VersaWorks settings prior to starting cutting. For the printer settings, refer to the printer manual.
- You can also use ([**Cut Controls**]) for [**Queue Properties**] and [**Settings**] to change settings.

Step 1: Performing Test Cutting

Procedure

1. **Select the printer to use, and then click (the hamburger menu).**

2. **Click [Test Cut].**

   The following message appears: [**The following cutting will be performed.Do you want to continue?**]

   Test cutting will be performed under the displayed conditions. Check the page size and media type.

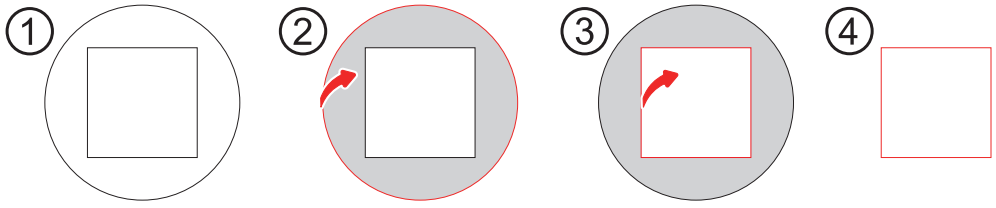
3. **Specify the queue folder with [Add Job To] and click [OK].**

   The job for test cutting is added to the specified job list, and the test pattern is cut automatically.

   Once the job has been cut, it is automatically deleted from the job list.

4. **Check the results of the cutting test.**

   It is necessary to adjust the settings for each item according to the test results.



Step	Check item	Result	Setting item	Adjustment
①	Check the shape.	The cut shape is distorted.	[**Cutting Speed**]	Reduce
②	Peel off the circle.	The square also peels off.	[**Cutting Force**]	Increase
		Some uncut areas remain.	[**Cutting Speed**]	Reduce
③	Peel off the square.	The blade leaves faint traces on the backing paper.	[**Cutting Force**]	No change
		The blade trace is indistinct.		Increase
		The blade trace is too deep and cuts into the backing paper.		Reduce

Step	Check item	Result		Setting item	Adjustment
④	Check the shape of the square you have peeled off.		Corners are not rounded and do not have horns.	[**Blade Offset**]	No change
			The corners are rounded.		Increase
			The corners have "horns."		Reduce

Step 2: Configuring the Cutting Conditions

Follow the procedure below to configure the cutting conditions on the basis of the type of media or the result of test cutting.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click ⚙ [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click ⚙ for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click ✂ [Cut Controls].**
3. **In [Operation Mode], select one of the following.**
   - **[Print & Cut]**
   - **[Cut & Print]**
   - **[Cut Only]**
4. **Select the [Cut Passes] checkbox, and then enter the number of passes.**

   MEMO

   When cutting thick media or hard media, depending on the media, cutting multiple times with lower blade force may give more aesthetically pleasing results than cutting once with higher blade force. Increase the number of cut passes as necessary.
5. **Select the [Cutting Conditions Settings] checkbox.**

   Adjust the setting according to the test cutting results.

Setting item	Details
[Cutting Speed]	Enter the cutting speed in cm/s.
[Cutting Force]	Enter the blade force in units of gram-force.
[Blade Offset]	Enter the blade offset value (the distance between the tip and the center of the blade) in millimeters. Enter the offset value for the blade being used.

6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].

- To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Changing Cutting Line Colors: Job Assistant

You can set the color of the cutting line created with Job Assistant to make it easily distinguishable from the print data.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Job Assistant] window.**
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Job Assistant**].
   - With the job to set selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job menu, and then click [**Job Assistant**].
2. **Click** ⚙.
3. **Select a color from [Cutting Line] under [Color Settings].**
   You can also select the [**Perforated Cutting Line**] color.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **Check the message that appears, and then click [Yes].**
   The [**Job Assistant**] window closes, and a job with the set cutting line color is added.

Other Cutting

Performing Perforated Cutting at Image Boundaries

Performs perforated cutting at image boundaries for print data including cutting lines.
Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click **[Settings]**.

     The **[Settings]** window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The **[Queue Properties]** appears.
2. **Click [Cut Controls].**
3. **In [Operation Mode], select one of the following.**
   - **[Print & Cut]**
   - **[Cut & Print]**
   - **[Cut Only]**
4. **Select [Perforated Cut] for [Cut Image Boundaries].**
5. **Set the [Conditions for Cutting Perforated Lines].**
   - **[Perforation Length]**: Length of the part that will be cut through to the backing paper
   - **[Perforation Force]**: Cutting force for the part that will be cut through to the backing paper
   - **[Half-cut Length]**: Length of the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper
   - **[Half-cut Force]**: Cutting force for the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper
6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in **[Settings]** will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in **[Queue Properties]**:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click **[OK]**.
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click **[Copy/Paste Setting Value]**>**[Apply Current Queue Settings]**.

MEMO

- The print data is an EPS file.

- A cutting line has been drawn around the border.

If both of the above conditions are met, additional settings are required. If you do not configure these additional settings, it may not be possible to cut a part of the border. Configure the settings shown below.

1. In the [**Queue Properties**] window, click  [**Layout**].
2. Enter a value in [**Margin**] under [**EPS**].
   - If you scale the image in the [**Queue Properties**]>[**Layout**] or [**Settings**]>[**Layout**] window, the size of the margin will also be scaled.
   - When you add a job to the job list, the margin set with [**Margin**] is automatically added within the range specified by the border.

7. **Perform cutting.**

Perforated cutting is performed at image boundaries.

MEMO

You can also change these settings in the [**Settings**] window after adding a job to the job list. However, you cannot change the [**Cut All Paths**] setting or the [**Margin**] setting under [**EPS**].

Laminating and Cutting After Printing: Cutting with Crop Marks

Printed media is removed, laminated or otherwise processed, installed again in the printer, and then cut. The VersaWorks settings are explained here, however for the overall workflow including the printer settings, refer to the "FAQ" manual related to VersaWorks 7.

RELATED LINKS

- Frequently Asked Questions: Cutting with Crop Marks

Step 1: Printing with Crop Marks

Follow the procedure below to print a job with crop marks used for position adjustment. It is assumed that the print data contains cutting lines.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click **[Settings]**.
2. **Click [Mark].**
3. **Select the [Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)] checkbox under [Marks].**

   MEMO

   As necessary, select the crop marks from **[Entire Area]**, **[For Each Row]**, or **[For Each Data Entry]**. Cutting is performed with the same setting.
4. **Click [Cut Controls].**
5. **Select [Print Only] for [Operation Mode].**
6. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window.

   MEMO

   - The print data is an EPS file.
   - A cutting line has been drawn around the border.

   If both of the above conditions are met, additional settings are required. If you do not configure these additional settings, it may not be possible to cut a part of the border. Configure the settings shown below.

   1. In the **[Queue Properties]** window, click **[Layout]**.
   2. Enter the value in **[Margin]** under **[EPS]**.
      - If you scale the image in the **[Queue Properties]**>**[Layout]** or **[Settings]**>**[Layout]** window, the size of the margin will also be scaled.

- When you add a job to the job list, the margin set with [**Margin**] is automatically added within the range specified by the border.

7. **Perform printing.**

The job is printed with crop marks.

Step 2: Cutting the Processed Media

Removed media is laminated or otherwise processed, then loaded again in the printer and only cutting is performed.

Procedure

1. **Set up the media in the printer again.**
   For details on setting up media that includes crop marks, refer to the printer manual.

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window for the printed job.**
   - Double-click the printed job.
   - Right-click a printed job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With the printed job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click .

   IMPORTANT
   Do not change the settings on the [**Layout**] tab.
   If you perform [**Get Media Width**] or change [**Scaling**] or [**Position**], the cut will be offset from the printing position.

3. **Click  [Mark].**

4. **Check that [Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)] under [Marks] is on.**
   For the crop marks, select the same settings as at the time of printing ([**Entire Area**], [**For Each Row**], or [**For Each Data Entry**]).

5. **Click  [Cut Controls].**

6. **Select [Cut Only] for [Operation Mode].**

7. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

8. **Perform cutting.**
   The printer detects the crop marks to adjust the position of the media, and then performs cutting.

Applying Crop Marks Individually to Multiple Images

You can apply crop marks [**For Each Row**] or [**For Each Data Entry**] within a group of images. Although this increases the time required for output, it also increases the accuracy when performing printing and cutting or cutting with crop marks. Configure this setting for print data that includes cutting lines.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] for a job that includes cutting lines.**
   - Double-click a job that includes cutting lines.
   - Right-click a job that includes cutting lines, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job that includes cutting lines selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
2. **Click [Layout].**
3. **Set [Copy] under [Print Properties].**
   Set the number of copies to output.
4. **Click [Mark].**
5. **Select the [Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)] checkbox, and then choose [For Each Row] or [For Each Data Entry].**
   - [**For Each Row**]: Crop marks will be applied with the row of images treated as a single group.
   - [**For Each Data Entry**]: Crop marks will be applied to each individual image.

   The preview window can be used to check how crop marks are applied.
6. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

MEMO

Crop marks can be applied to nested jobs in the same manner. However, all the jobs must be the same size.
P. 74 Creating a Nested Job from the Selected Jobs

Color Management

Output Color Settings

Adjusting the Output Colors 190
- Visually Selecting the Color Settings: [**Quick Setup**] 190
- Selecting the Color Setting from the List 192
- Adjusting the Color Saturation, Contrast, and Brightness of the Entire Image 194
- Adjusting the Tone Curve 195
- Customizing the Color Settings 198
- Specifying Color Settings for Each Object 201
- Obtaining a Stable Output Color 206
- Matching Different Printer Output Colors 214

Using the Color Matching Function (Add-on) 217
- Obtaining a Stable Output Color (Add-on) 218
- Matching Output Colors Between Different Printers (Add-on) 221

Adjusting the Output Colors

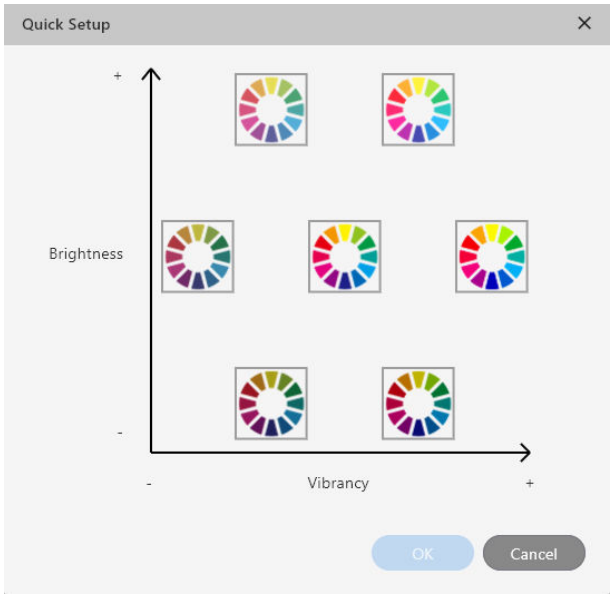
This section explains how to adjust the overall coloring of an image by selecting and customizing color settings, or by adjusting color saturation, contrast, brightness, tone curves, and other properties.

Color settings are preset combinations of input profiles and matching methods necessary for color management. You can control the overall color of the printed material by setting these input profiles and matching methods. In VersaWorks, you can perform color management by selecting the color settings.

You can adjust the density of each ink and the overall contrast and brightness as desired with [**Level Adjustment**]. In addition, adjustments to the tone curve enable more subtle adjustments.

Visually Selecting the Color Settings: [Quick Setup]

Visually select the color setting from seven color settings using [**Brightness**] and [**Vibrancy**].



Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click ⚙ [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click ⚙ for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Color Management].**
3. **Click [Quick Setup...] under [Color Settings].**

   A graph is displayed in which the seven color settings are arranged.

4. **Select the desired Color Management setting.**

   The selected Color Management setting will be surrounded by a blue border.

5. **Click [OK].**

   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Selecting the Color Setting from the List

Select the color setting from the following options.

[**True Rich Color Bright Vivid**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors with high saturation.
[**True Rich Color Bright Soft**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors. Compared with [**True Rich Color Bright Vivid**], it produces a more relaxed impression.
[**True Rich Color Vivid**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces colors with higher saturation than [**True Rich Color Standard**].
[**True Rich Color Standard**]	It has a wide color gamut, while producing natural-looking colors.
[**True Rich Color Soft**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces an impression that is more relaxed than [**True Rich Color Standard**].
[**True Rich Color Deep Vivid**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors with high saturation.
[**True Rich Color Deep Soft**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors. Compared with [**True Rich Color Deep Vivid**], it produces a more relaxed impression.
[**True Rich Color**] / [**True Rich Color 2**] / [**True Rich Color 3**]*1	Despite its high-saturation output, it has a wide color gamut, more naturally producing colors such as gray and peach. [**True Rich Color 2**] is enabled only for CMYK images. [**True Rich Color 3**] is enabled for both CMYK and RGB images.
[**Prepress general**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments.
[**Prepress U.S.**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in the United States.
[**Prepress EURO**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in Europe.
[**Japan Color**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in Japan.
[**MAX Impact**]	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.
[**Sign & Display**]	Does not use the profile embedded in the image data (the profile specified by the image data). You can obtain good results by selecting this setting when you want to print dark colors over the entirety of signs.
[**MAX Density U.S.**]	Color conversion just for the illustration is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. You can obtain good results by selecting this setting when you make the color density a priority.
[**MAX Density Japan**]	Color conversion just for the illustration is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. This setting is almost the same as [**MAX Density U.S.**], but output is performed while preserving the primary colors.
[**Density Control Only**]	Color conversion is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. The amount of ink is limited, so the ink does not overflow.
[**Custom**]	You can select the input profile and the matching method (color conversion) settings individually.
[**Custom High-Performance**]	You can select the input profile and the matching method (color conversion) settings individually. This assumes high performance.
[**Full Page Conversion Mode**]	Applies the same matching method for both raster and vector objects.

*1 [**True Rich Color 3**] with the broader color gamut is recommended. Select the same color setting when you set [**True Rich Color**] or [**True Rich Color 2**] before updating VersaWorks and want to output the same color.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].

- With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

  The [**Settings**] window appears.

- Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

  The [**Queue Properties**] appears.

2. **Click [Color Management].**

3. **Select a value from [Preset] under [Color Settings].**

   Depending on the printer you are using, some items may not be displayed.

4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Adjusting the Color Saturation, Contrast, and Brightness of the Entire Image

This section explains how to adjust the saturation of each ink, contrast, and brightness of the entire image.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Color Management].**
3. **Use the [Level Adjustment] slider bars to adjust the following levels.**

   MEMO

   Adjusting the slider bars under [**Level Adjustment**] has the same effect as increasing or decreasing by 10 percent the [**OUT**] value (when [**IN**] is 50 percent) when performing tone curve adjustment after clicking ▸ next to [**Tone Curves**].

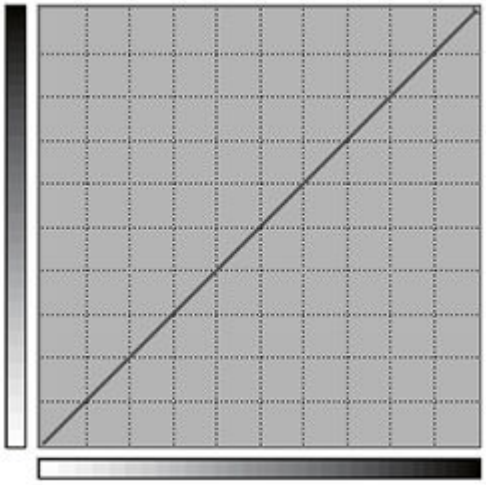
C (Cyan) / M (Magenta) / Y (Yellow) / K (Black)*1	Move the bar to the + (right) direction to darken and to the - (left) direction to lighten the color. Clear the [**Set individual level**] checkbox to adjust [**All Colors**] together.
[**Contrast**]	Move the bar to the + (right) direction to increase and to the - (left) direction to decrease the contrast.
[**Brightness**]	Move the bar to the + (right) direction to increase and to the - (left) direction to decrease the brightness.
[**Reset ALL**]	Click this button to reset all the level adjustment parameters to their default values (0). You can check the adjusted image in the layout area preview.

   *1 The colors displayed will vary depending on the model used.
4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
     - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

Adjusting the Tone Curve

Use the tone curve to fine-tune the tone and color of the image. The tone curve consists of a horizontal axis (input value, before adjustment) and a vertical axis (output value, after adjustment).

The horizontal axis indicates the original brightness of the image. The vertical axis expresses the brightness after adjustment. The left edge of the horizontal axis indicates white (the brightest part). The right edge of this axis indicates black (the darkest part). The top edge of the vertical axis indicates black (the darkest part). The bottom edge of this axis indicates white (the brightest part).



Generally, you only need to make minor adjustments to the tone curve when adjusting the tone and colors of an image. Note that adjustments to the image tone and color by way of the tone curve work in addition to the adjustments made with [**Level Adjustment**] and enable more subtle adjustments.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click ⚙ [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click ⚙ for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.
2. **Click [Color Management].**
3. **Click ▸ next to [Tone Curves] under [Level Adjustment].**

   The [**Tone Curves**] setting window appears.
4. **Under [Channel], select the color whose tone will be fine-tuned.**

   When [**Apply to All Colors**] is selected, all colors can be adjusted at the same time.
5. **Edit the tone curve.**

(1) **Click a certain point on the tone curve (the black line).**

A black dot (a control point) appears at the point you clicked. You can add multiple control points.

(2) **Use one of the following methods to adjust the shape of the tone curve by moving the control point:**

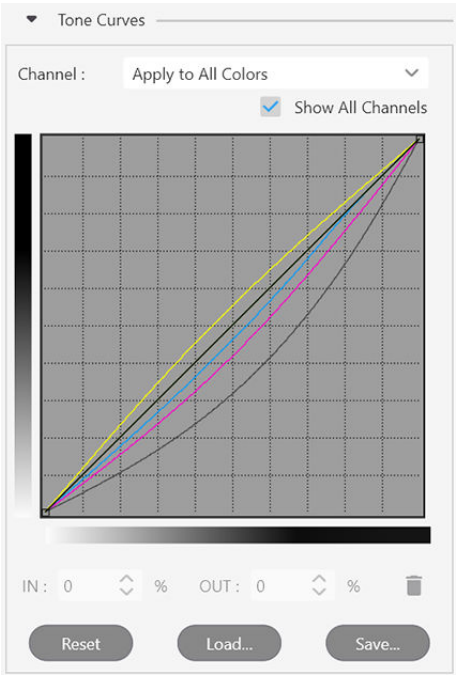
- **Drag the control point:**

  Move the pointer to the control point, and then drag to move it.
- **Click the control point, and then enter the value in [IN] or [OUT]:**

  The adjusted result is applied immediately to the layout area preview display.

MEMO

- If you have already adjusted the levels with [**Level Adjustment**], selecting the [**Show All Channels**] checkbox displays under [**Tone Curves**] the curves of the colors that have undergone [**Level Adjustment**].



- When there are multiple control points, control points other than the one being dragged are fixed in place. This makes it possible to select and adjust just a specific tone area.
- To initialize the tone curve, click [**Reset**].

6. Click [OK].

- Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
- When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
  - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
  - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**]. The changes are reflected in the layout area of the main window.

Applying the Tone Curve Adjustment to Other Jobs

Save the tone curve settings as a Roland curve file (.rcv) and apply the same settings to another job. The job settings and queue folder settings can also be saved.

However, level adjustment only using the [**Level Adjustment**] slide bar cannot be saved as a Roland curve file.

Procedure

1. **Adjust the tone curve according to the information given in Adjusting the Tone Curve(P. 195).**

2. **Click [Save...].**
   Enter a name, and then click [**Save**]. The tone curve (.rcv) is saved.

3. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

4. **If multiple printers are connected to the computer, select the printer that you want to apply the saved tone curve to.**

5. **Perform the operation shown below according to where the tone curve is being applied.**
   - Job
     - Double-click the job to set.
     - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
     - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

     The [**Settings**] window appears.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

     The [**Queue Properties**] appears.

6. **Click [Color Management].**

7. **Click next to [Tone Curves] under [Level Adjustment].**
   The [**Tone Curves**] setting window appears.

8. **Click [Load...].**

9. **Select the Roland curve file that was saved in Step 2 and click [Open].**

10. **Click [OK].**
    - Any changes made in [**Settings**] will be applied, and you will be returned to the main window.
    - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
      - When a message for saving the printing settings appears, click [**OK**].
      - To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, right-click the job and click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Current Queue Settings**].

    The same settings of the tone curve adjusted in Step 1 are applied to the job.

Customizing the Color Settings

VersaWorks offers options to configure input/output profiles and matching methods with [**Color Settings**] and [**Specify Printer Profile and Ignore Default**] to print as accurate a reproduction of the colors in the source data as possible.

- Input profiles: Also known as simulation profiles, these are ICC profiles that determine the colors output by the printer.
- Output Profile: Also known as printer profiles, these are ICC profiles that can be switched for different printers or media to enable more accurate color reproduction.
- Matching method: There are four methods for performing color conversions: [**Perceptual**], [**Colorimetric**], [**Saturation**], and [**Absolute**]. These methods determine how to adjust the colors or the overall color gamut when there are colors that cannot be reproduced with the color gamut of the printer.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click [Color Management].**

3. **Select [Custom] from [Preset] under [Color Settings].**

   If [**Prepress U.S.**] or similar setting is selected, [**Simulation Target Profiles**] and [**Matching Method**] can be changed. In this case, [**Preset**] changes to [**Custom**].

4. **Select [Simulation Target Profiles] or [Matching Method].**

   (1) **Select the input profile to use from the [Simulation Target Profiles] list.**

[RGB]	
[AdobeRGB1998.icc]	Produces most of the RGB color gamut (range). This setting is suitable for printing images with a wide range of colors.
[Roland_DG_SignRGB_v2.icc] [Roland_SignRGB.icc]	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.
[Roland_DG_WideGamut_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut and high saturation, and produces colors such as gray and peach more naturally.
[sRGB Color Space Profile.icm]	Produces a color space used for general computer monitors. Compared to AdobeRGB1998, sRGB has a narrow color gamut and produces muted colors.
[TrueRichColor_BS_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_BV_RGB, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.
[TrueRichColor_BV_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors with high saturation.
[TrueRichColor_DS_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_DV_RGB, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.
[TrueRichColor_DV_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors with high saturation.
[TrueRichColor_Std_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, while producing natural-looking colors.
[TrueRichColor_V_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces colors with higher saturation than TrueRichColor_Std_RGB.

[CMYK]	
[CoatedFOGRA39.icc]	Applies the Fogra39 standard color used for offset printing in Europe. It is distributed by Adobe.
[DIC_Standard_Color_SFC_1_0_2.icm]	Applies the DIC standard color, which produces relatively sharp colors.
[eciCMYK.icc]	Applies the Fogra53 standard color for wide color gamut printing in Europe.
[EuroscaleCoated.icc] [EuroscaleUncoated.icc]	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in Europe.
[GRACoL2006_Coated1v2.icc]	Applies the GRACol standard color used for offset printing in the United States.
[ISOcoated_v2_eci.icc]	Applies the Fogra39 standard color used for offset printing in Europe. It is distributed by the European Color Initiative (ECI).
[JapanColor2011Coated.icc] [JapanColor97.icm]	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in Japan, which produces overall deep colors.
[JapanStandard.icc]	Applies the standard color (based on JapanColor) used for offset printing in Japan, which produces slightly pale colors.
[RolandWideGamut2_CMYK.icc] *1 [RolandWideGamut_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut and high saturation, and produces colors such as gray and peach more naturally.
[Roland_DG_Deep_CMYK_1.0.icc]	Produces overall deep-colored images suitable for signs.
[Roland_SignCMYK.icc]	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.
[TOYO Offset Coat 1.1.icm]	Applies the Toyo Ink standard color, which produces relatively pale colors.
[TrueRichColor_BS_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_BV_CMYK, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.
[TrueRichColor_BV_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors with high saturation.
[TrueRichColor_DS_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_DV_CMYK, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.
[TrueRichColor_DV_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors with high saturation.
[TrueRichColor_Std_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, while producing natural-looking colors.
[TrueRichColor_V_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces colors with higher saturation than TrueRichColor_Std_CMYK.
[USWebCoatedSWOP.icc] [USWebUncoated.icc]	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in the United States.

*1 If they both appear, select [**RolandWideGamut2_CMYK.icc**], which has a broader color gamut. However to set [**RolandWideGamut_CMYK.icc**] and output using the same colors before updating VersaWorks, select [**RolandWideGamut_CMYK.icc**].

(2) **Select the color conversion method (the rendering application) from [Matching Method].**

[**Raster**] is used for raster data such as images. [**Vector**] is used for vector data such as vector drawings.

P. 200 Characteristics of Each Matching Method

(3) **To reduce speckling, select the checkbox of the colors to preserve in [Primary Color Retention Settings].**

To preserve C, M, Y, and K individual colors and secondary colors (C+M, M+Y, Y+C), select all five checkboxes.

(4) **To use the profile embedded in the image data for color conversions (if such a profile is available), select the [Use Embedded ICC Profile] checkbox.**

(5) **As necessary, select the [Specify Printer Profile and Ignore Default] checkbox and select the output profile.**

5. **Click [OK].**

You are returned to the main window.

Characteristics of Each Matching Method

The characteristics of each matching method are as follows.

- [**Perceptual**]

  Converts colors while maintaining tonal balance. The color values are changed, but their values relative to each other remain the same. Use this option if you want to emphasize the color balance/naturalness of a photographic image or something similar. This is a basic setting.

- [**Colorimetric**]

  Converts colors with emphasis on brightness. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a close color within the printer's color gamut. Use this option in situations where the color accuracy is emphasized while consideration is given for the white of the paper. In the printing industries in Europe and America, there are cases where this is the standard setting.

- [**Saturation**]

  Converts colors with emphasis on color vibrancy. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same saturation within the printer's color gamut. Use this option in situations where color vibrancy is required more than color accuracy, such as with charts and graphs.

- [**Absolute**]

  This option is not commonly used. Use it in situations where color accuracy is required, such as with PANTONE or DIC used with logos, corporate colors, etc.

- [**Calibration and Ink Limit**]

  Color conversion is disabled and printing is performed as defined in the data. The total ink is limited by the ink limit settings in the media. Depending on the item selected under [**Color Settings**], this may not be displayed.

  P. 192 Selecting the Color Setting from the List

- [**Calibration**]

  Color conversion is disabled and printing is performed as defined in the data. There is no ink limit, so the surface of the media may be oversaturated. Depending on the item selected under [**Color Settings**], this may not be displayed.

  P. 192 Selecting the Color Setting from the List

Specifying Color Settings for Each Object

Apply color management individually to the objects (images, illustrations, and text[*1]) in the print data.

Actual print data may contain a mixture of raster, vector, and text objects as shown below. The color model (RGB or CMYK) may also differ.

The color management for each object is summarized in the table below.

Object	Description	Matching Method	Color Model	Primary Color Preservation *2	Supplementary Information
[**Image**]	Photos, bitmap images, rasterized text, etc.	All images	RGB	✗	
			CMYK	✓	
[**Vector**]	Vector illustrations created in design software and outlined text	All illustrations and text *3	RGB	✗	
			CMYK	✓	
[**Text**] *4	Text input from design software		RGB	✗	
			CMYK	✓	To enable preservation of primary colors only for text: [**Apply Text Only**]

*2 Preservation of C, M, Y, and K individual colors and secondary colors (C+M, M+Y, Y+C) is possible.

*3 Text refers to objects input from design software or outlined objects.

*4 Color management cannot be applied to text alone.

When specifying color settings for each object, the following effects can be expected.

- A combination of illustrations with vivid color contrast and photos with natural color tones

  Usage examples: Using Separate Color Management for Images and Text(P. 202)
- Printing 2D codes and text in data clearly

  Usage examples: Applying Color Management to Images While Preserving Primary Colors for Text(P. 204)

*1
- Image: Photos and other raster data
- Illustration: Line drawings and other vector data
- Text: Character data input from design software

Using Separate Color Management for Images and Text

Apply color management to images, illustrations, and text as follows.



Object	[Color Model]	[Matching Method]	[Simulation Target Profiles]
Photo	RGB	[Perceptual]	[TrueRichColor_DS_RGB.icc]
Illustration	CMYK	[Saturation]	[TrueRichColor_BV_CMYK.icc]
Text			

Procedure

1. **Add the print data to the job list.**
2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
   - With a job selected, click on the left side of the job tool area, and then click **[Settings]**.
3. **Click [Color Management].**

Photo settings

4. **Click next to [Raster] in [Advanced Settings] under [Color Settings].**
5. **Specify [Matching Method] and [Simulation Target Profiles].**

Illustration and text settings

6. Click ▸ next to [Vector/Text] in [Advanced Settings] under [Color Settings].

7. Specify [Matching Method] and [Simulation Target Profiles].

8. Click [OK].
   You are returned to the main window.

Applying Color Management to Images While Preserving Primary Colors for Text

The purposes of preserving primary colors for text are as follows:

- To print barcodes and 2D codes clearly
- To prevent other colors from being mixed into the C, M, Y, and K individual colors or secondary colors (C+M, M+Y, Y+C) for illustrations and text
- To print text sharply.

Configure the settings so that natural color management is applied to images, while primary colors are preserved for illustrations and text.



Object	CMYK Value	Primary Color Preservation
Text (A)	C: 0, M: 0, Y: 60, K: 0	✓
Text (B)	C: 0, M: 20, Y: 10, K: 0	✓
2D code background (C)	C: 40, M: 30, Y: 20, K: 0	✗
2D code (D)	C: 20, M: 20, Y: 0, K: 0	✓

Procedure

1. Refer to Using Separate Color Management for Images and Text(P. 202) and apply color management to images.
2. Click ▸ next to [Vector/Text] in [Advanced Settings] under [Color Settings].
3. Select the checkboxes for [Yellow], [All Secondary Colors], and [Apply Text Only] under [Primary Color Retention Settings].

IMPORTANT

When [**Apply Text Only**] is selected, primary colors are preserved for text but not for illustrations.

4. **Click [OK].**

You are returned to the main window.

Obtaining a Stable Output Color

Adjust for variation in the output colors resulting from changes over time with the same model or from individual differences with different machines of the same model.

The output colors will vary slightly even on the same printer if the data is output at different times. In addition, even with the same settings on the same models, the output colors will vary slightly from one printer to another. The causes of such issues are changes to printers over time; slight individual differences in items such as the printers, the ink, and the media; and temperature or humidity changes in the operating environment.

By determining the reference colors and matching the output colors to the reference colors, you can obtain stable output colors by reducing color variations caused by factors such as changes over time and individual differences.

However the following conditions must be met.

- The same measurement instrument is used at all times.
- The measurement instrument is calibrated appropriately.
- The print settings such as the media, resolution, printing quality, and color settings must be the same for the printer that output the reference colors (hereinafter referred to as the "reference printer") and the color match target printer (hereinafter referred to as the "target printer").
- The "reference printer" and the "target printer" are the same printer or are the same model of printer and the ink types are the same.

MEMO

Examples of utilizing this function

- When you want to unify the output colors from multiple printers in order to produce a large-volume order in a short time
- When you want to unify the output color for different production times such as regular small-lot production, or once yearly production

Step 1: Saving the [Reference Printer Data]

Define the reference colors, print a color chart, and then use a measurement instrument to save the reference colors as the [**Reference Printer Data**].

Procedure

1. **Connect the measurement instrument to the computer, and then set up the measurement instrument.**
   P. 14 Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use
2. **Select the reference printer and click ☰ (hamburger menu).**
3. **Click [Printer Color Match (Basic)].**
4. **Click the [Print Chart] tab.**
5. **Select [Reference Printer Data] for [Printer Data Type].**
6. **Click [Printing Condition Settings].**
   Configure settings as necessary.
7. **Click [OK].**

The [**Printing Condition Settings**] screen closes.

8. **Click [Print].**
   The [**Print Chart for Printer Color Matching**] screen appears.

9. **Specify the queue folder with [Add Job To] and click [OK].**
   When the message "Job has been sent successfully." appears, click [**OK**]. The color chart is printed.

10. **Click the [Measure Chart] tab.**

11. **Perform color measurement.**
    - Depending on the type of measurement instrument, it may be necessary to perform calibration in advance.
    - Perform color measurement as directed in the instructions shown on the window.

12. **When the measurement is finished, click [Register].**
    The [**Register Reference Printer Data**] screen appears.

13. **Enter the desired name in [Reference Printer Data (Required)].**
    If you want to record the [**Media Name for Chart Printing**], enter it.

14. **Click [OK].**
    The [**Register Reference Printer Data**] screen closes.

15. **Click [OK] in the [Printer Color Match (Basic)] window.**
    The [**Printer Color Match (Basic)**] screen closes.

This completes the procedure for saving the reference color data as the [**Reference Printer Data**]. Saved [**Reference Printer Data**] is listed on the [**Reference Printer Data**] tab in the [**Printer Color Match (Basic)**] window.

Step 2: Saving the [**Target Printer Data**]

Step 2: Saving the [Target Printer Data]

On the printer that you want to match colors with, create a color chart with the same settings as the reference color data, and then use a measurement instrument to save the target colors as the [**Target Printer Data**].

Procedure

1. **Connect the measurement instrument to the computer, and then set up the measurement instrument.**
   P. 14 Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use
2. **Select the target printer and click ☰ (hamburger menu).**
3. **Click [Printer Color Match (Basic)].**
4. **Click the [Print Chart] tab.**
5. **Select [Target Printer Data] for [Printer Data Type].**
6. **Click [Printing Condition Settings].**
   Configure the same setting as [**Reference Printer Data**].
7. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Printing Condition Settings**] screen closes.
8. **Click [Print].**
   The [**Print Chart for Printer Color Matching**] screen appears.
9. **Specify the queue folder with [Add Job To] and click [OK].**
   When the message "Job has been sent successfully." appears, click [**OK**]. The color chart is printed.
10. **Click the [Measure Chart] tab.**
11. **Perform color measurement.**
    - Depending on the type of measurement instrument, it may be necessary to perform calibration in advance.
    - Perform color measurement as directed in the instructions shown on the window.
12. **When the measurement is finished, click [Register].**
    The [**Register Target Printer Data**] screen appears.
13. **Enter the desired name in [Target Printer Data (Required)].**
    If you want to record the [**Media Name for Chart Printing**], enter it.
14. **Click [OK].**
    The [**Register Target Printer Data**] screen closes.
15. **Click [OK] in the [Printer Color Match (Basic)] window.**
    The [**Printer Color Match (Basic)**] screen closes.

This completes the procedure for saving the target color data as the [**Target Printer Data**]. Saved [**Target Printer Data**] is listed on the [**Target Printer Data**] tab in the [**Printer Color Match (Basic)**] window.

Step 3: Registering the [**Reference Printer Data**]

Step 3: Registering the [Reference Printer Data]

Register the [**Reference Printer Data**] so that it can be used as data for color matching.

If the computer being used is the one on which the [**Reference Printer Data**] was created, this operation is unnecessary. Proceed to Step 4: Adjusting the Output Colors and Performing Printing(P. 211).

Procedure

1. **Check that [Reference Printer Data] is saved on the computer that you are now using (or a computer on the same LAN network).**

   If there is no [**Reference Printer Data**], export (Exporting the [Reference Printer Data](P. 212)) the [**Reference Printer Data**] that has been created on another computer and save this data on the computer being used (or on a computer on the same LAN).

2. **Select the reference printer and click ☰ (hamburger menu).**

3. **Click [Printer Color Match (Basic)].**

4. **Click the [Reference Printer Data] tab.**

   The reference printer data is displayed in the [**Reference Printer Data List**].

5. **Click 🗀.**

   The file selection window appears.

6. **Select the [Reference Printer Data] (file extension cmr) to register, and then click [Open].**

   IMPORTANT

   - To check the details of the reference printer data, select the desired data, and then click [**Review Details**]. You can check the detailed settings on the [**Details**] window that appears.
   - If the selected reference printer cannot be used because the printer is different or for another reason, a message indicating that it will not be loaded appears. Click [**OK**], then select the desired reference printer data.

7. **If there are multiple instances of reference printer data, repeat Steps 5 and 6.**

8. **Click [OK] in the [Printer Color Match (Basic)] window.**

   This completes the procedure for registering the [**Reference Printer Data**].

Step 4: Adjusting the Output Colors and Performing Printing

Step 4: Adjusting the Output Colors and Performing Printing

Use [**Reference Printer Data**] and [**Target Printer Data**] to perform color matching and output data.

Procedure

1. **Click  for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] screen appears.

2. **Click  [Color Management].**

3. **Select [Printer Color Match (Basic)] for [Printer Color Match Settings].**

4. **Click [Color Settings] under [Reference Printer Data].**

   The [**Reference Printer Data Settings**] screen appears.

5. **Select the printer data to use as the reference from [Reference Printer Data List], then click [OK].**

   To check the details of the reference printer data, select the data to check, and then click [**Review Details**].

6. **Click [Color Settings] under [Target Printer Data].**

   The [**Target Printer Data Settings**] screen appears.

7. **Select the printer data to use as the target from [Target Printer Data List], then click [OK].**

   To check the details of the target printer data, select the data to check, and then click [**Review Details**].

8. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window.

   When a window confirming the setting changes appears, click [**OK**].

9. **Perform printing.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Exporting the [Reference Printer Data]

By exporting the created [**Reference Printer Data**], it is possible to use [**Reference Printer Data**] on a different computer.

Procedure

1. Select the printer to export the [Reference Printer Data], and then click (the hamburger menu).
2. Click [Printer Color Match (Basic)].
3. Click the [Reference Printer Data] tab.
4. Select the desired [Reference Printer Data], and then click .
5. Select the desired folder, and then click [Save].

Checking the Detailed Settings of the Reference/Target Printer Data

You can check the detailed [**Reference Printer Data**] and [**Target Printer Data**] settings (the profile settings and the matching method).

To match colors, the settings must be the same for both of these pieces of data.

Procedure

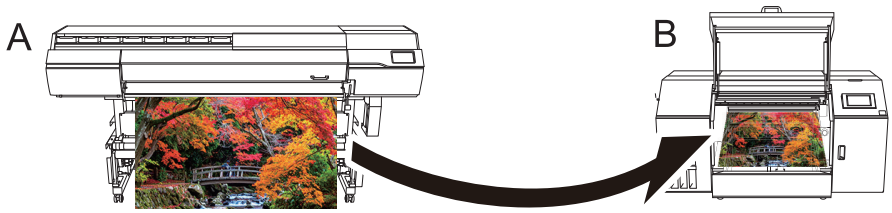
1. **Select the printer to check and click ☰ (hamburger menu).**
2. **Click [Printer Color Match (Basic)].**
3. **Click the [Reference Printer Data] or [Target Printer Data] tab.**
4. **Select the printer data to check, then click [Review Details].**

   The [**Details**] screen appears. The details of [**Color Management**] and [**Color Adjustment**] can be checked.

Matching Different Printer Output Colors

It is possible to match the output colors of printers that are different models. It is also possible when the model is the same but the ink type is different.

A: target printer (color matching source), B: printer to be reproduced (color matching destination)



To match the colors on different machines with the same model and same ink type, perform Obtaining a Stable Output Color(P. 206).

The flow of this operation is as follows.

1. **Creating a simulation profile**

   Create a texture and output it from the printer to use as the color match source. Then measure the test chart and create the simulation profile.

2. **Creating and installing the output ICC profile**

   a. Create the media at the printer registered in VersaWorks where color matching will be performed. For details, refer to "Step 1: Create New Media" in Registering New Media(P. 160).

   b. Create a texture and output it from the printer where color matching will be performed. Then measure the test chart and create the output ICC profile.

   c. Configure the settings for the output ICC profile that was created on the media which was created in Step 1. For details, refer to "Step 4: Registering a Profile" in Registering New Media(P. 160).

3. **Installing a simulation profile**

   Install the simulation profile that was created in Step 1 in VersaWorks. Refer to Adding Simulation Target Profiles(P. 214) for details.

4. **Profile application and printing**

   Using VersaWorks, configure the profile settings on the printer where color matching will be performed, and perform printing. Refer to Selecting the Printer Profiles(P. 216) for details.

For details of the operation, contact your authorized dealer.

This operation is complex due to the large number of procedures and the multiple pieces of software that are used. To simplify color matching between different printers, an add-on that completes all operations within VersaWorks is available. Consider making use of the section Matching Output Colors Between Different Printers (Add-on)(P. 221).

Adding Simulation Target Profiles

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Simulation Profile Management].**

2. **Click under [RGB] or [CMYK] according to the profile being loaded.**

   The file selection window appears.

3. **Select the profile to load, and click [Open].**

4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Simulation Profile Management**] window closes.

Selecting the Printer Profiles

Change the printer profiles.

Printer profiles are profiles that are used when outputting jobs to the printer. Normally, the optimal profile is selected to match the media selected with [**Media Name**] under [**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**], so there is no need to change the profile.

Procedure

1. **Click  for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click  [Color Management].**

3. **Select the [Specify Printer Profile and Ignore Default] checkbox.**

4. **Select the profile to use.**

5. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window.

MEMO

These settings can also be customized per job using the [**Settings**] window. The estimated printing time of the job for each [**Print Quality**] mode is displayed in the [**Settings**] window.

Using the Color Matching Function (Add-on)

Output color matching can be achieved with Matching Different Printer Output Colors(P. 214) or Obtaining a Stable Output Color(P. 206). However, please consider introducing add-ons to reduce the number of processes and the time and effort required for color matching.

The three main add-ons are listed below.

- Color matching for changes in printer output color (including color matching of the same ink type on a different machine)

  P. 218 Obtaining a Stable Output Color (Add-on)

- Complete color matching of different models in VersaWorks

  P. 221 1. Creating a Simulation Profile (Add-on)

- Printer profile creation on VersaWorks

  P. 224 3. Creating a Printer Profile (Add-on)

Guidance on VersaWorks operations and reductions in processes can help reduce work time. Purchasing add-ons is highly recommended.

RELATED LINKS

- Purchasing an Add-on

Obtaining a Stable Output Color (Add-on)

For Obtaining a Stable Output Color(P. 206), which is used to adjust for variations in output color resulting from changes over time with the same model or from individual differences with different machines of the same model, operations are simplified and the procedure is guided in wizard format.

The differences from the existing color matching function are summarized below.

Existing	[Add-ons]
Features Set the printing conditions for the printers, then print and measure the charts.	**Features** • Printers can be grouped, and charts can be printed under the same printing conditions. • When selecting a group in [**Settings**], the printing conditions and the reference/target data are set automatically.
Procedure 1. P. 206 Saving the [**Reference Printer Data**] 2. P. 208 Saving the [**Target Printer Data**] 3. P. 210 Registering the [**Reference Printer Data**] 4. P. 211 Adjusting the Output Colors and Performing Printing	**Procedure** 1. Setting a color matching group 2. Printing color charts for each printer 3. Measuring the charts and creating target printer data 4. Setting the reference printer 5. Adjusting the Output Colors and Performing Printing

This section explains the workflow for using two printers of the same model and ink type (XG-No. 1 and XG-No. 2) and setting XG-No. 1 as the reference printer.

Procedure

1. Prepare the measurement instrument and start the color matching menu.

(1) **Set the measurement instrument.**

Set it to make it ready to perform the measurement.

(2) **Select either printer and click** ☰ **(hamburger menu) or** ⚙ **to the right of the printer on the home screen.**

2. Click [Printer Color Match (Extended)].

3. Select [Configure Color Match Settings], and then click [Next >].

[Color Matching Group Settings]

4. Click [Add Color Matching Group].

5. Enter the group name, and then click [OK].

6. Select the printer.

(1) **Click [Settings] under [Printer List (Required)].**

(2) **Select the printer, and then click** >> **.**

(3) **Click [Close].**

7. Set the [Printing Conditions].

(1) **Click [Settings] under [Printing Conditions (Required)].**

(2) **Set the [Printing Conditions].**

(3) **Click [OK].**

8. Click [Next >].

[Printing and Measuring Charts]

9. Select the printer in [Printer Name] and print the color chart.
   - Print the color chart on the other printer in the same way.
   - Be sure to print on the same media.

10. Measure each color chart.

[Setting the Reference Data]

11. Click [Select Measured Color Matching Data] and select the printer to use as the reference (XG-No. 1).

12. Click [Exit].
    The reference printer is now set to XG-No. 1, and the target printer is set to XG-No. 2.

Printing with XG-No. 2

13. Add the print data to the job list.

14. Use one of the methods below to open [Settings].
    - Double-click the job.
    - Right-click a job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
    - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

15. Click [Color Management].

16. Select [Printer Color Match (Extended)] for [Printer Color Match Settings].

17. Click [Preset].

18. Click the [Color Matching with Same Model] tab.

19. Select the applicable color matching group and click [OK].
    You are returned to the [**Settings**] window.

20. Perform printing.

Color Matching Group Settings (Add-on)

The color matching group settings menu appears by following the steps below.

1. Click (hamburger menu) on the main screen or to the right of the printer on the home screen.
2. Click [**Printer Color Match (Extended)**].
3. Select [**Configure Color Match Settings**], and then click [**Next >**].
   The registered color matching groups appear.
4. Click to the right of the target color matching group.

[**Add/Delete Printer**]	When adding a printer of the same model, add it to the color matching group and remove printers that are no longer used from the color matching group. Click [**Settings**] under [**Printer List (Required)**], select a printer from the printer list on the left, and click >> to add the printer. Select the printer to remove from the color matching group on the right and click << to delete it.
[**Repeat Measurement**]	If the color matching effect is not satisfactory, measure the color again. On the [**Print/Measure Chart**] screen, select the printer and click [**Measure**].
[**Reference Data Settings**]	Change the configured reference data or import reference data.
[**Change Name**]	Change the color matching group name.
[**Export Reference Data**]	Export the reference data.
[**Delete**]	Delete the color matching group.

Matching Output Colors Between Different Printers (Add-on)

With Matching Different Printer Output Colors(P. 214), creating simulation profiles and printer profiles (also called media profiles or ICC profiles) requires profile software, while color measurement and profile settings are performed in VersaWorks, meaning multiple software applications are used. The process is also complicated due to the large number of steps required.

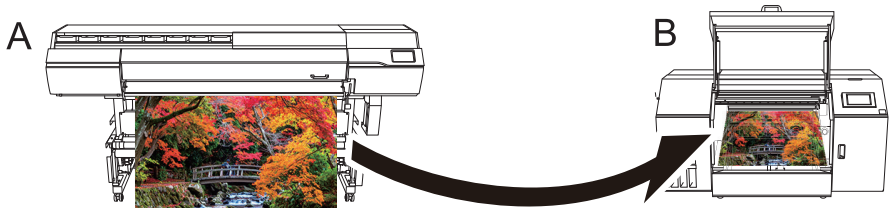
To simplify color matching between different printers, an add-on that completes all operations within VersaWorks is available. To use the add-on, the following conditions must be met.

- A measurement instrument has been registered in VersaWorks and is available for use.
- **[Printer Color Match (Extended)]** has been purchased.

As an example, Printer A is the target printer (color matching source) and Printer B is the printer to be reproduced (color matching destination), and both have been registered in VersaWorks.

IMPORTANT

A printer not registered in VersaWorks, such as a third-party printer, can also be used as the target printer (A).



The flow of this operation is as follows.

1. Creating a Simulation Profile (Add-on)
2. Printing with Simulation Profiles (Add-on)

   If the color matching is not satisfactory, proceed to 3.
3. Creating a Printer Profile (Add-on)
4. Printing with Printer Profiles (Add-on)

However, if the media is predetermined and you want to improve color accuracy for PANTONE, DIC, etc., it is more efficient to start from 3. Creating a Printer Profile (Add-on).

1. Creating a Simulation Profile (Add-on)

Procedure

1. Prepare the measurement instrument and start the color matching menu.

(1) **Set the measurement instrument.**

Set it to make it ready to perform the measurement.

(2) **Click ☰ (hamburger menu) of the target printer in the main window, or ⚙ to the right of the target printer on the home screen.**

(3) **Click [Printer Color Match (Extended)].**

(4) **Select [Configure Color Match Settings with a Different Model], and then click [Next >].**

The window changes to **[Color Match Settings for a Different Model]**.

(5) **Click [Add Color Match Setting for Different Models].**

(6) **Enter the setting name and click [OK].**

2. **A: Set the target printer and the printing conditions.**

(1) **Select [Select from Printers Connected to VersaWorks].**

MEMO

When using target printers that are not connected to VersaWorks, such as third-party printers

Follow the steps below to print a profile chart. Next, measure the color and create the simulation profile.

1. Select [**Printer Not Connected to VersaWorks**].
2. Create and save the profile chart data.
3. Print the profile charts on printers not connected to VersaWorks.

(2) **Select the target printer from [Printer].**

(3) **Click [Settings] under [Printing Conditions].**

The [**Printing Condition Settings**] window appears.

(4) **Set [Media Type], [Print Quality], and similar items, and then click [OK].**

The [**Printing Condition Settings**] window closes and the [**Printer Color Match (Extended)**] window with the set printing conditions appears.

(5) **Click [Next >].**

3. **Print the profile chart and measure the color.**

(1) **Select a chart and click [Print Job].**

(2) **When the Print Chart window appears, click [OK].**

The profile chart is printed.

(3) **Perform [Measure].**

Perform color measurement as directed in the instructions shown in the window.

(4) **Repeat steps (1) to (3) to print and measure all charts.**

(5) **Click [Next >].**

4. **Create a simulation profile.**

(1) **On the simulation profile creation window, enter the names for the CMYK and RGB simulation profiles.**

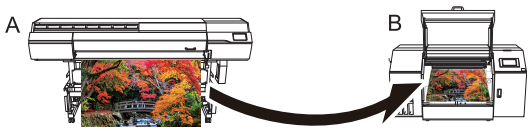
Ensure that the names are not duplicates of existing profile names.

(2) **Click [Create].**

The CMYK and RGB simulation profiles will be created.

2. Printing with Simulation Profiles (Add-on)

Simulation profiles created on A: a target printer (color matching source) can be used for printing on B: a printer to be reproduced (color matching destination).



Procedure

1. **Add the print data to the job list of the printer to be reproduced.**
2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job.
   - Right-click a job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
3. **Click [Color Management].**
4. **Select [Printer Color Match (Extended)] for [Printer Color Match Settings].**
5. **Click [Preset].**
6. **Click the [Color Match Settings for a Different Model] tab.**
7. **Select the profile created in 1. Creating a Simulation Profile (Add-on)(P. 221) and click [OK].**
   You are returned to the [**Settings**] window.
8. **Perform printing.**

If the color matching is not satisfactory, proceed to 3. Creating a Printer Profile (Add-on)(P. 224).

3. Creating a Printer Profile (Add-on)

If color matching is not sufficient even when printing with a simulation profile, create a printer profile (media profile).

Procedure

1. Prepare the measurement instrument and start the media creation menu.

(1) **In the main window, click** (hamburger menu) **of the printer to be reproduced, or, on the home screen, click** **to the right of the printer to be reproduced.**

(2) **Click [Media Explorer].**

(3) **Click** .

The [**Create Printer Profile ***] window appears.

(4) **Enter [Media Name] and select [Template].**

(5) **Click [Next >].**

(6) **Select the mode.**

Multiple modes can be selected. Create the profiles one by one from here.

(7) **Click [Next >].**

2. Configure the media settings.

(1) **From [Select Mode], select the mode in which to create a profile.**

(2) **Click [Next >].**

If a profile has already been created, a confirmation window appears. To continue, click [**OK**].

(3) **Set the [Print Quality Settings].**

(4) **Click [Next >].**

(5) **Under [Output Limit Settings], click [Print Job].**

(6) **Specify the [Add Job To], and then click [OK].**

A test chart is printed.

(7) **Check the test chart and specify the amount of ink for the patch where no ink bleeding occurs in [Single Color Limit].**

A value such as "75/150" is printed on the test chart. Here, specify the front value, "75." Enter the output limits for C, M, Y, and K.

(8) **Click [Next >].**

3. Print the chart and measure the color.

(1) **Under [Print/Measure Chart], click [Print].**

(2) **Specify the [Add Job To], and then click [OK].**

A test chart is printed.

(3) **Perform [Measure].**

Perform color measurement as directed in the instructions shown in the window.

(4) **Click [Next >].**

The [**Fine Tune and Apply**] window appears.

(5) **Check the density curve for each channel.**

- If the density curve rises to the right, proceed to the next step.
- If any portion of the density curve is flat or slopes downward to the right, adjust the curve so that it always rises to the right.

(6) **Click [Next >].**

The [**Total Ink Settings**] window appears.

4. Configure the [Total Ink Settings].

(1) **Click [Print].**

Print the maximum ink limit adjustment patch as directed in the instructions shown on the screen.

(2) **Check the test chart and specify the [Total Ink] for the printed patch that did not result in oversaturation or bleeding.**

A value such as "75/150" is printed on the test chart. Here, specify the back value, "150." Enter the optimal maximum ink amount for the grid part within the patch.

(3) **Click [Next >].**

The [**Print Chart**] window appears.

5. Print the profile creation chart.

(1) **Select [Swatch Amount].**

- [**Many**]
- [**Few**]

(2) **Click [Print].**

Print the profile creation chart as directed in the instructions shown on the screen.

(3) **Click [Next >].**

The [**Measure Chart**] window appears.

6. Measure the profile creation chart.

(1) **Click [Measure].**

Perform color measurement as directed in the instructions shown on the window.

(2) **After measuring all charts, click [Next >].**

The profile creation window appears.

7. Configure the advanced settings to create a profile.

(1) **Set the following.**

- [**Color Separation Settings (Black)**]
  - [**Black Start**]: Sets the density level at which use of K ink should start.
  - [**Maximum Black**]: Sets the upper limit for K ink.
  - [**Black Curve**]: Sets the amount of K ink relative to brightness.
  - [**Black Width**]: Specifies the color range in which K ink is used.
- [**Color Separation Settings**]

  Select from [**Min**], [**Light**], [**Medium**], or [**Heavy**] for [**Spot Color Curve**].
- [**Table Settings**]

  Specify the number of divisions in the color space.
  - [**Size A to B**]: Select from [**Light**], [**Medium**], or [**Large**].
  - [**Size B to A**]: Select from [**Light**], [**Medium**], or [**Large**].

(2) **Enter the profile name, and then click [Create].**

The profile will be created.

(3) **Click [Next >].**

8. Perform Steps 1 to 7 to create profiles for the required modes.

During profile creation, [**Cancel**] and [**Exit**] can be performed from the [**Select Mode**] window. When finished, profiles created up to that point are added to [**Media Name**].

4. Printing with Printer Profiles (Add-on)

Select the printer profile in [**Quality Settings**]>[**Media Name**] and print.

Procedure

1. **Add the print data to the job list.**
2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job.
   - Right-click a job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
3. **Click [Quality].**
4. **From [Media Name] under [Quality Settings], select the media (printer profile) created in** 3. Creating a Printer Profile (Add-on)(P. 224).
5. **Perform printing.**

Recreating a Printer Profile (Add-on)

The parameters of the color separation, table settings, etc., that are set when you create a media profile have an effect on the media profile. When, for example, you do not obtain the expected result, change these parameters and create the profile again.

Procedure

1. **Click ☰ (the hamburger menu) for the target printer in the main window.**
2. **Click [Media Explorer].**
3. **Expand the media you have created, and then double-click the mode (such as CMYK(v)).**
4. **Click [Create Profile].**

   A window for confirming whether to perform repeat measurement appears.
5. **Depending on whether you require repeat measurement, perform one of the following actions.**
   - If you are going to change the parameters without performing repeat measurement: Click [**Yes**].

     The parameter settings window appears. Change the parameters and create the profile again.
   - If you are going to perform repeat measurement: Click [**No**].

     The test chart printing window appears. Refer to step 3 of 3. Creating a Printer Profile (Add-on)(P. 224) and perform the procedure again from the printing of the test chart.

Printing for Quality and Color Comparisons

Printing While Changing Settings in Small Increments: [**Variation Job**] 230
Step 1: Generating a Variation Job 230
Step 2: Adjusting the Printing Size and Printing 234
Step 3: Evaluating Variation Printing for Application to a Job 235

Printing While Changing Settings in Small Increments: [Variation Job]

The quality of the printed document is determined by a combination of factors such as the printing settings, printer, ink, and media. This can be used to generate a job whose settings change in small increments ([**Variation Job**]), output this job, and evaluate the output results of multiple generated variation jobs to quickly approach the desired quality.

The settings that can be changed are shown below.

Item	Setting to change	Type of variation job
[Quality]>[Quality Settings]	• [Media Name]: PVC, banner, paper, etc. • [Print Quality]: [High Quality], [Standard], etc.*1 • [Resolution]: 720 × 1440 dpi, 720 × 720 dpi, etc.	P. 230 Comparing Quality Settings
[Color Management]>[Color Settings]>[Preset]	True Rich Color 3, PrepressGeneral, etc.	P. 232 Comparing Color Management
[Color Management]>[Level Adjustment]	• [Print Variation with Various Colors] You can select from the reference, uncorrected color and eight corrected colors. • [Print Variation with Specific Color Densities] You can select from five levels of emphasis for the specified color.	P. 233 Comparing Color Adjustment

*1 The [Resolution] is displayed depending on the model.

Step 1: Generating a Variation Job

Creating a variation job, whose settings change in small increments, allows for the following three types of comparisons. Select the desired comparison.

- P. 230 Comparing Quality Settings
- P. 232 Comparing Color Management
- P. 233 Comparing Color Adjustment

Comparing Quality Settings

Procedure

1. **Select the job to set.**
2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Generate Variation Job] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Generate Variation Job**].
   - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Generate Variation Job**].
3. **Select [Compare Quality Settings], and then click [Next >].**
4. **Select the media to print on, and then click [Next >].**
5. **Select the printing quality, and then click [Next >].**
6. **Select the print mode to add to the variation job.**
   The selected variation jobs are listed in the [**Variation Job**] field.

MEMO

A. and B. next to the print modes in the [**Variation Job**] field are displayed as variation A and variation B in the job list.

7. **Click [OK].**

A variation job with the selected media and quality is generated in the job list.

Comparing Color Management

Procedure

1. **Select the job to set.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Generate Variation Job] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Generate Variation Job**].
   - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Generate Variation Job**].

3. **Select [Compare Color Management], and then click [Next >].**

4. **Select the Color Management setting.**
   The selected Color Management settings are listed in the [**Variation Job**] field.

   MEMO
   - A. and B. next to the Color Management settings in the [**Variation Job**] field are displayed as variation A and variation B in the job list.
   - For the characteristics of color settings, refer to Selecting the Color Setting from the List(P. 192).

5. **Click [OK].**
   A variation job with the selected Color Management setting is generated in the job list.

Comparing Color Adjustment

Procedure

1. **Select the job to set.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Generate Variation Job] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Generate Variation Job**].
   - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click  [**Generate Variation Job**].

3. **Select [Compare Color Adjustment], and then click [Next >].**

4. **Select one of the following options, and then click [Next >].**
   - [**Print Variation with Various Colors**]
   - [**Print Variation with Specific Color Densities**]

5. **Perform the following according to the selection.**
   - When [**Print Variation with Various Colors**] is selected: Select the color (magenta, red, orange, etc.) to emphasize and [**Adjustment Level**] (+1 to +5).
   - When [**Print Variation with Specific Color Densities**] is selected: Select the density degree (+1 to +5) and [**Adjustment Color**] (magenta, red, orange, etc.).

   The selected color and emphasis level are listed in the [**Variation Job**] field.

   MEMO

   A. and B. next to the colors in the [**Variation Job**] field are displayed as variation A and variation B in the job list.

6. **Click [OK].**

   A variation job with the selected adjustment color is generated in the job list.

Step 2: Adjusting the Printing Size and Printing

Procedure

1. **Right-click the variation job, and then click [Change Print Size].**

2. **Change the following items if necessary:**
   - **[Scaling]**
     You can specify the **[Scale]**, **[W]**, and **[H]** items.
     These items are linked. Changing one changes the others. For more information, refer to Zooming In / Zooming Out(P. 45).
   - **[Page Range]**
     You can specify the page range for jobs spanning multiple pages.
   - **[Clipping]**
     You can specify the field to print.
     P. 107 Printing the Selected Area of the Image: [Clip Image]

3. **Click [OK].**
   The **[Change Print Size]** window closes.

4. **Perform printing.**
   The set variation job is printed.

MEMO

The printing method depends on the variation type as shown below.
- Vertical printing: **[Compare Quality Settings]**
  For the flat-bed model, switch the media for each variation job.
- Horizontal printing: **[Compare Color Management]**, **[Compare Color Adjustment]**
  For the flat-bed model, switch the media for each page when multiple pages are being printed.

Step 3: Evaluating Variation Printing for Application to a Job

Procedure

1. **Determine the setting to apply from the printing result.**
2. **Right-click the variation job, and then click [Evaluate Variation Job].**
3. **Select the determined variation, and then click [OK].**
   The settings of the selected variation are applied to the reference job.

   MEMO

   If the variation job is not required after application, select the [**Delete Variation Job after Applying Settings**] checkbox.

Spot Color

What Is [**Spot Color**]? 237
Printing with [**Spot Color**] 238
Step 1: Select [**Spot Color**]. 238
Step 2: Creating Print Data with Illustration Software 239
Step 3: Performing Printing 240
Printing Using the Roland Color System Library 242
Step 1: Printing a Color Chart 242
Step 2: Registering Roland Color System Library Colors in Illustration Software 245
Step 3: Creating Print Data with Illustration Software 248
Step 4: Performing Printing 249
Printing Using White Ink/Gloss Ink/Primer/Metallic Silver Ink/Structural Ink 250
Step 1: Registering a Spot Color in Illustration Software 250
Step 2: Creating Print Data with Illustration Software 253
Step 3: Performing Printing 254
Generation of Spot Color Plates (White, Gloss, Primer, Etc.) 255
[**Special Color Plate Generation**] Function ([**Settings**]) 255
Spot Color Plate Generation with [**Job Assistant**] 259
Adjusting the Position and Size of Spot Color Plates 264
Correcting the Position of Spot Color Plates 264
Correcting the Size of Spot Color Plates 266
Other Spot Color Functions 268
Replacing or Fine-tuning the Output Color of a [**Spot Color**] 268
Assigning a Color from Another Spot Color Library to a Newly Created Spot Color Library 270
Assigning White/Metallic Silver/Gloss/Primer/Structural to a [**Spot Color**] in Existing Print Data 271
Importing a [**Spot Color**] and Creating a Spot Color Library 273
Taking Advantage of TIFF's Extra Channels 274
Adjusting the Output Color of a [**Spot Color**]: [**Nearest Color Finder**] 275
Step 1: Printing the [**Spot Color**] Chart 275
Step 2: Selecting and Applying the Desired Color 277
Managing the [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] 279
Readjusting the Adjustment Results in [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] 281
Using [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] in Other Computers 282
Using a Spot Color Library 283
Creating a Spot Color Library 283
Saving the Spot Color Library as a File 285
Importing a Saved Spot Color Library 286
Deleting a Spot Color Library 287
Replicating and Editing a Spot Color Library 288
Switching the Spot Color Library to Use 289
[**Spot Color**] Usage Examples 290
Specifying [**Spot Color**] in [**Settings**] 290

What Is [Spot Color]?

A [**Spot Color**] is a special color that is not a process color (CMYK). In this manual, "special mixture colors such as DIC and PANTONE," "colors for which a library has been created in VersaWorks," "Roland DG Corporation white ink, gloss ink, primer, metallic silver ink, and structural ink," and "areas specified for variable printing" are called [**Spot Color**]. The main features are shown below.

- Special mixture colors such as DIC and PANTONE are used when specifying company image colors or similar colors. It is also possible to select a [**Spot Color**] from the color samples and specify the color that you want to express. VersaWorks converts the [**Spot Color**] explained above to process colors for printing. However, because a [**Spot Color**] converted to process colors is affected by the ink, media, and other factors, VersaWorks includes a function for adjusting the [**Spot Color**] output color.
- VersaWorks includes "spot color libraries" for CMYK inks. There is also a separate color library for green, red, orange, and metallic silver inks. For gloss inks, texture and brio-coat libraries are also separately prepared. It is also possible to create and use newly arranged spot color libraries.
- With a printer that includes white ink, gloss ink, primer, metallic silver ink, and structural ink, it is possible to set these special inks as a [**Spot Color**] when printing. A set [**Spot Color**] is displayed as a [**Special Items**] in the preview area.
- With variable printing which replaces some characters and images one at a time, the replacement print area is specified using [**Spot Color**].

MEMO

VersaWorks can only recognize a [**Spot Color**] in vector data. Colors used in raster data such as bitmap images cannot be recognized.

Printing with [Spot Color]

First decide the [**Spot Color**] to use and specify the [**Spot Color**] in the print data. Then configure the [**Spot Color**] settings in VersaWorks and perform printing.

Step 1: Select [Spot Color].

Before creating print data with illustration software, check the color chart that was printed from the DIC or PANTONE color sample book or the VersaWorks spot color library, and select the [**Spot Color**] to use. Or, you can select the [**Spot Color**] by the following procedure.

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings].**

2. **Select the spot color library from [Library List].**

   Check [**Color Type**] and confirm that the intended spot color library is selected.

   - Lab: Can be used with all models.
   - CMYK*: Cannot be used when an unsupported color (ink) is included.

   MEMO

   - With a spot color library where [**Attributes**] is [**Preset**], the contents can only be checked.
   - With a [**User Defined**] spot color library, the contents can be edited.

     P. 288 Replicating and Editing a Spot Color Library

3. **From the list of spot colors in the spot color library selected on the right side of the screen, make a note of the [Spot Color Name] that is used.**

4. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window.

Step 2: Creating Print Data with Illustration Software

Specify the [**Spot Color**] in the print data with the illustration software you are using.

MEMO

For the procedure for specifying a [**Spot Color**], see the instruction manual of the illustration software you are using.

Procedure

1. **Create print data with the specified [Spot Color] that was noted in Step 1.**

   MEMO

   Set so that the spot color name noted in Step 1: Select [**Spot Color**].(P. 238) matches the spot color name in the illustration software. If the names do not match, VersaWorks will not recognize the color as a [**Spot Color**]. Names of spot colors are case-sensitive, so make sure the name is typed correctly.

2. **Save the created data.**

Step 3: Performing Printing

Check that the [**Spot Color**] has been recognized, then start printing.

Procedure

1. **Add the print data where the [Spot Color] was specified to the job list.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

3. **Click [Color Replacement].**

4. **Select the [Convert Spot Color] checkbox.**
   When [**Spot Color**] is properly recognized, the following items are displayed:

[**Color Name**]	The name of the spot color used with the job is displayed. MEMO If the [**Spot Color**] is one where the color type is defined in the Lab color space, a caution mark (⚠) is displayed when this color cannot be reproduced (it is out of the gamut) with the selected media and quality.
[**Nearest Color Finder**]	When the [**Nearest Color Finder**]>[**Apply Adjusted Color**] checkbox is selected, ✓ is displayed for any [**Spot Color**] where the nearest color finder adjustments can be applied. When you are not applying these adjustments, clear this checkbox.
[**Output Color**]	Displays the process color values that have been converted to.

MEMO

For a [**Spot Color**] defined in the Lab color space, as necessary click [**Details**] and select the color matching method from [**Matching Method**] under [**Edit Output Color**].

5. **Configure the media settings and other such settings necessary for printing.**
   Color matching is performed according to this setting.
   P. 200 Characteristics of Each Matching Method

   The [**Matching Method**] setting under [**Color Management**] will be ignored.

IMPORTANT

A [**Spot Color**] not defined in the Lab color space will be printed according to the density curve set in the [**Media Explorer**] window. But in this case, the ink limit does not apply. Be cautious of excessive ink usage when printing.

6. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

7. **Perform printing.**

Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Printing Using the Roland Color System Library

The Roland Color System Library is Roland DG's original spot color library. It consists of more than 1,000 [**Spot Color**].

When this library is used, you can easily create a color chart with your printer. In contrast to commercially available color charts, this feature generates a color chart printed using "your printer" and "your media" (slight color differences may occur depending on the conditions of the printer and media). By selecting colors from this color chart and creating print data with these colors, you can accurately reproduce the desired colors.

Step 1: Printing a Color Chart

Print a Roland Color System Library color chart.

MEMO

The printer name, serial number, media type, ink type, and other information is printed in the color chart.

Procedure

1. **Load into the printer the media on which the color chart will be printed.**
2. **Click**  **for the queue folder to be used.**

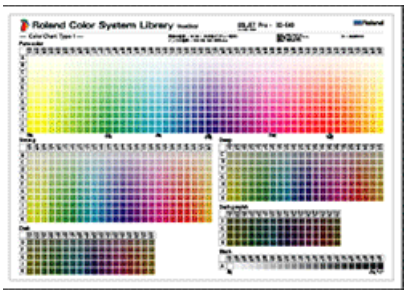
   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.
3. **Click**  **[Quality], and then set [Quality Settings].**
4. **Click**  **[Color Management], and then set [Color Settings].**

   IMPORTANT

   When printing a color chart, the settings from the [**Queue Properties**] window are applied to the [**Quality Settings**] and [**Color Settings**] setting items. You cannot change the settings using the [**Settings**] window after the job has been added to the job list.
5. **Click [OK].**

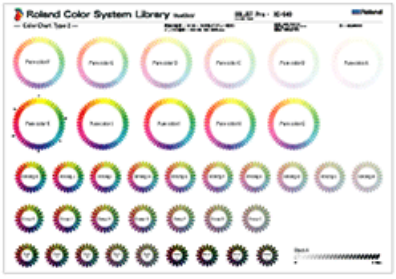
   The [**Queue Properties**] window closes.
6. **Select the printer to use, and then click**  **(the hamburger menu).**
7. **Click the color chart that you want to print.**
   - [**Color Chart Type-1**]

     The colors in the library are categorized by saturation and arranged to vary in hue in the horizontal direction and in brightness in the vertical direction. To print this color chart in its original size, you need A1-size or larger media.



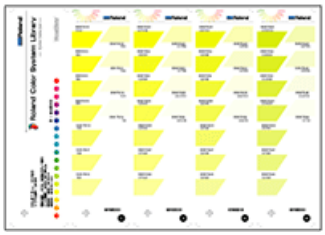
- **[Color Chart Type-2]**

  The colors in the library are categorized by color tone and a color wheel is printed for each tone. (Black colors are arranged linearly by brightness.) To print this color chart in its original size, you need A1-size or larger media.



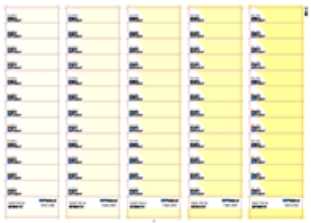
- **[Color Selector]**

  Prints the ink combination chart. The chart shows the ink combination used for printing each spot color. Although each page is printed in A4 size, you can cut the pieces along the trimming marks and bind them in numeric order (outline numbers) to create a color sample book that can be used to compare the colors.



- **[Color Chips]**

  Prints 12 color chips per color for 5 colors in A4 size. The colors are categorized by color tone. Click [**Color Chips**] and click the tone name to print the color chips for the selected tone.



MEMO

[**Color Chips**] are printed with cutting lines so that the color chips can be trimmed and used individually. If you print the color chips on media with a backing paper using a printer with a cutting function, you can create color chip stickers by setting [**Operation Mode**] under [**Cut Controls**] to [**Print & Cut**].

The following message appears: [**The following job will be printed.Do you want to continue?**]

Check whether the media loaded in the printer is large enough for the displayed page size.

8. **Specify the queue folder with [Add Job To] and click [OK].**
   The selected type of color chart is added to the job list.

9. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

10. **Click [Layout].**

11. **Configure the [Media Settings] and other settings.**

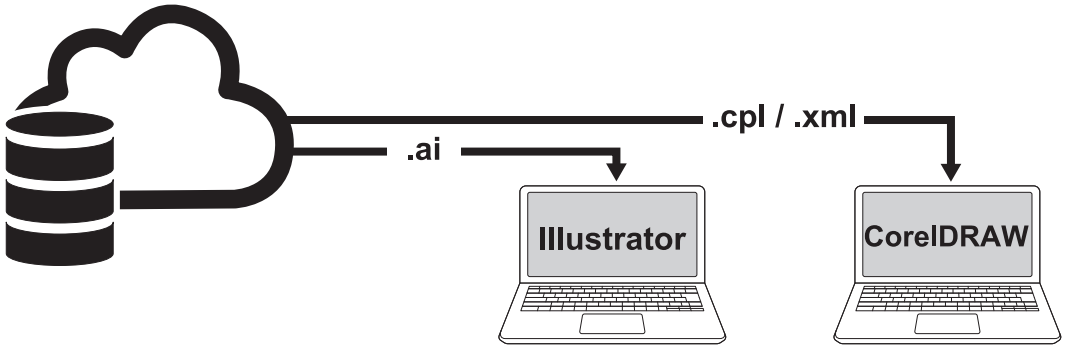
12. **Click [OK].**
    You are returned to the main window.

13. **Perform printing.**
    The selected color chart is printed.

Step 2: Registering Roland Color System Library Colors in Illustration Software

Load Roland Color System Library colors into the illustration software color palette. This is very useful, as this allows you to easily specify the [**Spot Color**] from the color palette when creating print data.

Palette data for Adobe Illustrator and for CorelDRAW is available on the Roland DG Corporation website. Register this data in the illustration software. Save these data files to the target computer (the computer on which Adobe Illustrator or CorelDRAW is installed).



When Using Adobe Illustrator

This section explains how to register a color system library color in Adobe Illustrator.

MEMO

With VersaWorks, in addition to the library registered here ("**Roland Color System Library**"), the following libraries and [**Spot Color**] are prepared. Because it is possible to register for all off them with a single process, it is recommended that you copy and paste all files.

- **Roland Grapac Bri-o-coat Library**
- **Roland Green Color System Library**
- **Roland Orange Color System Library**
- **Roland Red Color System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Color System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Texture System Library**
- **Roland Texture System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Color**
- **Roland Structural Texture System Library**
- **Roland VersaWorks**

Procedure

1. **Access the following website.**
   https://downloadcenter.rolanddg.com/VersaWorks7#software
2. **Click [VersaWorks 7].**
3. **Click [Illustrator].**
   Download Illustrator.zip according to the on-screen instructions.
4. **Open the [Swatch] or [Swatch Library] folder in the following folder on the target computer (the computer on which Adobe Illustrator is installed).**
   - Windows: [C:\Program Files\Adobe\Adobe Illustrator 20**\Presets\(used language)]
   - Mac: [Macintosh HD\Applications\Adobe Illustrator 20**\Presets\(used language)]

5. **Extract the files from Illustrator.zip, and then save the file "Roland Color System Library.ai" in the folder opened in Step 4.**

6. **Start Adobe Illustrator on the target computer.**

7. **On the Adobe Illustrator menu, click [Window]>[Swatch Libraries]>[Roland Color System Library].**
   The "**Roland Color System Library**" panel is displayed. This completes the registration procedure.

When Using CorelDRAW

This section explains how to register a color system library color in CorelDRAW.

MEMO

The following procedure corresponds to CorelDRAW version 25.2.
The procedure may vary depending on the version of this software. For details of the version, see the CorelDRAW website.

Procedure

1. **Access the following website.**
   https://downloadcenter.rolanddg.com/VersaWorks7#software
2. **Click [VersaWorks 7].**
3. **Click [CorelDRAW].**
   Download CorelDRAW.zip according to the on-screen instructions.
4. **Extract the files from CorelDRAW.zip.**
5. **Save the "userinks.cpl" and "userinks.xml" files in the desired location on the target computer (the computer on which CorelDRAW is installed).**
   - **"userinks.cpl"**: For each Roland library (such as the Roland Color System Library)
   - **"userinks.xml"**: For RDG spot colors (such as RDG_White)
6. **Start CorelDRAW.**
7. **On the menu in CorelDRAW, select [Window]>[Color Palettes]>[Palettes].**
   The [**Palettes**] window appears.
8. **Click  below the pull-down menu.**
9. **Select the "userinks.cpl" file that you saved in Step 5, and then click [Open].**
10. **Click  under the pull-down menu again, select "userinks.xml," and then click [Open].**
11. **Delete the two files that you saved in Step 5.**

Step 3: Creating Print Data with Illustration Software

Create print data with illustration software using the [**Spot Color**] registered in the Roland Color System Library.

MEMO

For the procedure for specifying a [**Spot Color**], see the instruction manual of the illustration software you are using.

Procedure

1. **Create print data with a specified [Spot Color] registered in Roland Color System Library.**
2. **Save the created data.**

Step 4: Performing Printing

The method of printing using Roland Color System Library [**Spot Color**] is the same as when printing using other [**Spot Color**].

Procedure

1. **Add the print data where the [Spot Color] was specified to the job list.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

3. **Click [Color Replacement].**

4. **Select the [Convert Spot Color] checkbox.**
   When [**Spot Color**] is properly recognized, the following items are displayed:

[**Color Name**]	The name of the spot color used with the job is displayed. MEMO If the [**Spot Color**] is one defined in the Lab color space, a caution mark (⚠) is displayed when this color cannot be reproduced (it is out of the gamut) with the selected media and quality.
[**Nearest Color Finder**]	When the [**Nearest Color Finder**]>[**Apply Adjusted Color**] checkbox is selected, is displayed for any [**Spot Color**] where the nearest color finder adjustments can be applied. When you are not applying these adjustments, clear this checkbox.
[**Output Color**]	Displays the process color values that have been converted to.

5. **Configure the layout, quality, and other settings necessary for printing.**

6. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

7. **Perform printing.**
   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Printing Using White Ink/Gloss Ink/Primer/Metallic Silver Ink/Structural Ink

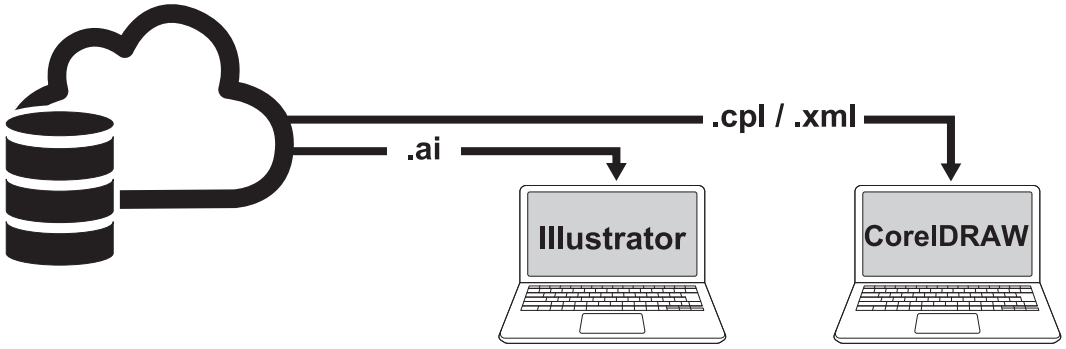
When printing using Roland DG Corporation's genuine white ink, gloss ink, primer, metallic silver ink, or structural ink, it is necessary to specify the [**Spot Color**] with the print data so that they can be recognized by VersaWorks.

First register the white, gloss, primer, metallic silver, and structural [**Spot Color**] in the illustration software (the color palettes of the cutting line and perforated cutting line are registered at the same time). Then create the print data and configure the various settings with VersaWorks before printing.

Step 1: Registering a Spot Color in Illustration Software

Here, load a [**Spot Color**] into the color palette of the illustration software. This is very useful, as this allows you to easily specify the [**Spot Color**] from the color palette when creating print data.

Palette data for Adobe Illustrator and for CorelDRAW is available on the Roland DG Corporation website. Register this data in the illustration software. Save these data files to the target computer (the computer on which Adobe Illustrator or CorelDRAW is installed).



When Using Adobe Illustrator

This section explains how to register a color system library color in Adobe Illustrator.

MEMO

With VersaWorks, in addition to the [**Spot Color**] registered here ("**Roland VersaWorks**"), the following libraries are prepared. Because it is possible to register for all off them with a single process, it is recommended that you copy and paste all files.

- **Roland Grapac Bri-o-coat Library**
- **Roland Green Color System Library**
- **Roland Orange Color System Library**
- **Roland Red Color System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Color System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Texture System Library**
- **Roland Texture System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Color**
- **Roland Color System Library**
- **Roland Structural Texture System Library**

Procedure

1. **Access the following website.**
   https://downloadcenter.rolanddg.com/VersaWorks7#software
2. **Click [VersaWorks 7].**

3. **Click [Illustrator].**

   Download Illustrator.zip according to the on-screen instructions.

4. **Open the [Swatch] or [Swatch Library] folder in the following folder on the target computer (the computer on which Adobe Illustrator is installed).**

   - Windows: [C:\Program Files\Adobe\Adobe Illustrator 20**\Presets\(used language)]
   - Mac: [Macintosh HD\Applications\Adobe Illustrator 20**\Presets\(used language)]

5. **Extract the files from Illustrator.zip, and then save the file "Roland VersaWorks.ai" in the folder opened in Step 4.**

6. **Start Adobe Illustrator on the target computer.**

7. **From the Adobe Illustrator menu, click [Window]>[Swatch Library]>[Roland VersaWorks].**

   The "**Roland VersaWorks**" panel is displayed. This completes the registration procedure.

When Using CorelDRAW

This section explains how to register a color system library color in CorelDRAW.

MEMO

The following procedure corresponds to CorelDRAW version 25.2.
The procedure may vary depending on the version of this software. For details of the version, see the CorelDRAW website.

Procedure

1. **Access the following website.**
   https://downloadcenter.rolanddg.com/VersaWorks7#software
2. **Click [VersaWorks 7].**
3. **Click [CorelDRAW].**
   Download CorelDRAW.zip according to the on-screen instructions.
4. **Extract the files from CorelDRAW.zip.**
5. **Save the "userinks.cpl" and "userinks.xml" files in the desired location on the target computer (the computer on which CorelDRAW is installed).**
   - **"userinks.cpl"**: For each Roland library (such as the Roland Color System Library)
   - **"userinks.xml"**: For RDG spot colors (such as RDG_White)
6. **Start CorelDRAW.**
7. **On the menu in CorelDRAW, select [Window]>[Color Palettes]>[Palettes].**
   The [**Palettes**] window appears.
8. **Click**  **below the pull-down menu.**
9. **Select the "userinks.cpl" file that you saved in Step 5, and then click [Open].**
10. **Click**  **under the pull-down menu again, select "userinks.xml," and then click [Open].**
11. **Delete the two files that you saved in Step 5.**

Step 2: Creating Print Data with Illustration Software

The method for creating print data using white, gloss, primer, metallic silver, or structural is the same as when using other [**Spot Color**].

MEMO

The spot color name "S" is assigned to [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**] by the [**VersaWorks Default Alias**] spot color library.

Procedure

1. **Create print data that specifies the [Spot Color].**

   The color palette that is selected for each spot color is as shown below.

   - White: [**RDG_WHITE**]
   - Gloss: [**RDG_Gloss**]
   - Primer: [**RDG_PRIMER**]
   - Metallic silver: [**RDG_MetallicSilver**]
   - Structural: [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**]

   MEMO

   The same color palette contains cutting lines ([**CutContour**]) and perforated cutting lines ([**PerfCutContour**]).

2. **Save the created data.**

Step 3: Performing Printing

Follow the procedure below to check that [**Spot Color**] has been properly recognized, and then start printing.

Procedure

1. **Add the print data where the [Spot Color] was specified to the job list.**
2. **Select the target file in the job list.**
3. **Check that the [Spot Color] is displayed for [Special Items] under [Document Information] in the preview area.**
   - White: Wh
   - Gloss: Gl
   - Primer: Pr
   - Metallic silver: Mt
   - Structural: St
4. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click ⚙ [**Settings**].
5. **Click [Quality].**
6. **Set [Mode] under [Quality Settings].**
   The following is an example. [**Mode**] varies depending on the model. It may also be necessary to specify [**Media Name**].
   - White: [**White -> CMYK**], [**CMYK -> White**], etc.
   - Gloss: [**CMYK -> MatteVarnish**], [**GlossVarnish**], etc.
   - Primer: [**Primer -> CMYK**], etc.
   - Metallic silver: [**CMYKMt**], [**MetallicSilver**], etc.
   - Structural: [**CMYKSt**], [**St**]
7. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.
8. **Perform printing.**
   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Generation of Spot Color Plates (White, Gloss, Primer, Etc.)

Special inks such as [**Special Color Plate Generation**][*1] Generate spot color plates using the function ([**Settings**]) or [**Job Assistant**]. As shown below, each program offers specific characteristics for generating spot color plates. Use whichever method best suits your application.

[Special Color Plate Generation]Function	[Job Assistant]
• Uses vector images for all target data. • White, gloss, primer, metallic silver, and structural [**Spot Color**] can be generated.[*2] • Can be applied to Queue Properties (data-specific omission of settings) • For the spot color plate area, you can select [**Entire Image**], [**Print Area (Object-Based)**], [**Print Area (Color-Based)**], [**Outside Print Area (Object-Based)**], or [**Outside Print Area (Color-Based)**].	• PDF format used for target data • White, gloss, primer, and structural [**Spot Color**] can be generated • Creation of individual objects • Object resizing according to reference object • Can be used as [**Spot Color**] print data

*2 Only spot color plates not used in the print data can be generated with this function.

[Special Color Plate Generation] Function ([Settings])

Use the [**Special Color Plate Generation**] function to generate white, gloss, primer, metallic silver, or structural spot color plates.

Step 1: Checking the Conditions That Permit Spot Color Plate Generation

First check the conditions that permit spot color plate generation. If a [**Spot Color**] is set on the print data, that [**Spot Color**] cannot be generated by the [**Special Color Plate Generation**] function.

Procedure

1. **Select the job from the job list.**

2. **Check [Special Items] from [Document Information] in the preview area.**

   When the following [**Spot Color**] is selected, that spot color cannot be generated.

   - Wh : White plate
   - Gl : Gloss plate
   - Pr : Primer plate
   - Mt : Metallic silver plate
   - St : Structural plate

   IMPORTANT

   There are several other conditions under which spot color plates cannot be generated. The main conditions are listed below.

   - Vector data for which an arbitrary spot color name has been assigned to each white ink/metallic silver ink/gloss ink/primer/structural ink

*1 [**RDG_WHITE**] are used as [**Spot Color**].

Assigning White/Metallic Silver/Gloss/Primer/Structural to a [**Spot Color**] in Existing Print Data(P. 271)

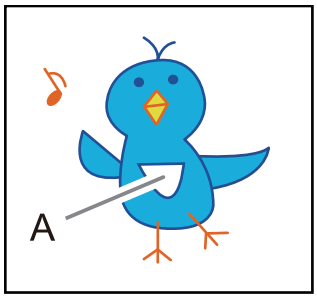
- Raster data (excluding data in PNG format)
- Variable field to specify with the template file for variable printing

Step 2: Generating Spot Color Plates

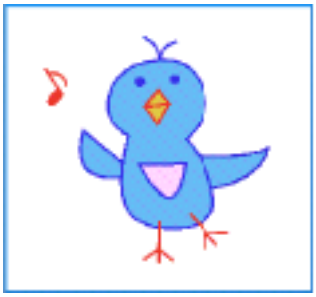
Generate spot color plates. When you generate two [**Spot Color**], you can configure different settings on each spot color plate such as by changing the generated pattern or the density between the primer plate and the white plate.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
2. **Click [Quality].**
3. **Use [Mode] under [Quality Settings] to select the mode including the [Spot Color].**
4. **Select the [Spot Color] to generate with [Special Color] under [Special Color Plate Generation].**
   When a mode containing two [**Spot Color**] is selected, use the pull-down menu to select the [**Spot Color**] and configure its settings.
5. **Select the [Generate Special Color Plate] checkbox.**
6. **Specify the [Generated Pattern].**
   Print data



A	Object with C: 0, M: 0, Y: 0, and K: 0 or with R: 255, G: 255, and B: 255

Generated pattern	Image of the spot color plate to generate	[Settings] window
[**Print Area (Object-Based)**] The plate is generated below the objects. However, the spot color plate is also generated for objects with C: 0, M: 0, Y: 0, and K: 0 or with R: 255, G: 255, and B: 255.		

Generated pattern	Image of the spot color plate to generate	[Settings] window
[Print Area (Color-Based)] The plate is generated below the objects. However, the spot color plate is not generated for objects with C: 0, M: 0, Y: 0, and K: 0 or with R: 255, G: 255, and B: 255.		
[Outside Print Area (Object-Based)] The plate is generated in a location where no objects are present. However, the spot color plate is not generated for objects with C: 0, M: 0, Y: 0, and K: 0 or with R: 255, G: 255, and B: 255.		
[Outside Print Area (Color-Based)] The plate is generated in a location where no objects are present. However, the spot color plate is also generated for objects with C: 0, M: 0, Y: 0, and K: 0 or with R: 255, G: 255, and B: 255.		
[Entire Image] The plate is generated for the entire job size.		

The generated spot color plate is displayed in the [**Settings**] window (white plate: pink, gloss plate: light blue, primer plate: green, etc.). You cannot generate a plate only for a specific object.

7. **If necessary, specify [Density].**

8. **If you selected a mode containing two [Spot Color] in Step 3, use the pull-down menu to select the remaining [Spot Color].**

9. **Perform Steps 5 to 7 again for the remaining spot color plate.**

10. **Click [OK].**

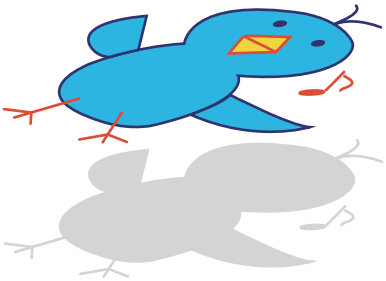
    You are returned to the main window.

Spot Color Plate Generation with [Job Assistant]

This section explains how to use [**Job Assistant**] to generate a spot color plate (white/gloss/primer/structural).

Creating Spot Color Objects for Print Data

Create spot color objects based on shapes included in the print data.



Procedure

1. **Select the job to which to add the [Spot Color] from the job list.**

   MEMO

   Spot color objects can only be created for PDF-format jobs.

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Job Assistant] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Job Assistant**].
   - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Job Assistant**].

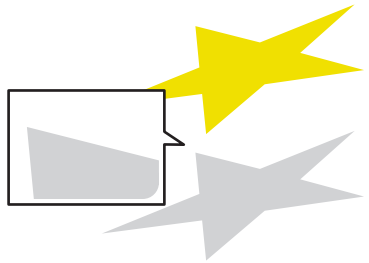
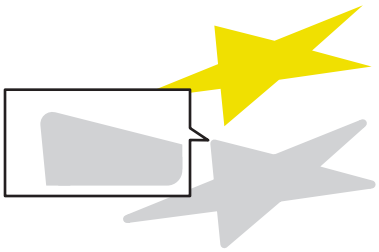
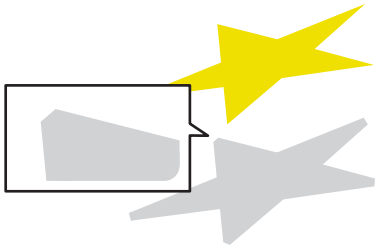
3. **Click the tab.**

4. **Click the shape to be the basis of the spot color plate in the preview area.**
   You can select multiple shapes by holding down the shift key while clicking.

5. **Select under [Editing Method].**

6. **In [Type of Spot Color], set [Spot Color] and [Density].**

7. **Select the following conditions for [Create Spot Color Object].**

[Corner Shape]	[Miter]: Creates a spot color object that maintains the corner shape. However when [Miter Limit] is on, then depending on the angle, a spot color object with chamfered corners may be created in the same way as [Bevel].	
	[Round]: Creates a spot color object that rounds the corners.	
	[Bevel]: Creates a spot color object that chamfers the corners.	
[Miter Limit] Enabled only when [Miter] is selected for [Corner Shape].	OFF: Creates a spot color object that maintains the corner regardless of the angle.	
	ON: According to the [Angle] setting, a spot color object with chamfered corners is created in the same way as [Bevel].	
[Angle] Enabled when [Miter Limit] is on and [Offset] is set to +.	Use the slider to set the [Angle] to be chamfered. For example, the more you set the angle to the [Large] direction, the wider will be the angle at which chamfering is performed.	–
[Offset]	Sets the distance from the outline of the selected shape at which to create the spot color object.	

8. **Click [Create].**

9. **Click [OK].**

10. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**

The [**Initialization Error**] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

Creating Spot Color Objects in the Shape You Want

If it is a simple shape like an ellipse or a rectangle, it can be added as a spot color object.

Procedure

1. **Select the job to which to add the [Spot Color] from the job list.**

   MEMO

   Spot color objects can only be created for PDF-format jobs.

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Job Assistant] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Job Assistant**].
   - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click  [**Job Assistant**].

3. **Click the  tab.**

4. **Select  under [Editing Method].**

5. **In [Type of Spot Color], set [Spot Color] and [Density].**

6. **Select the shape of the object.**
   - : Ellipse
   - : Rectangle

7. **Click [Draw].**
   The object for the selected shape is displayed.

8. **Select an object and use the mouse to match the size and position to the print data.**

9. **Click [OK].**

10. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**
    The [**Initialization Error**] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

Replacing Print Data Shapes with Spot Color Objects

Some shapes in the print data can be converted to a spot color object.

Procedure

1. **Select the job to which to add the [Spot Color] from the job list.**

   MEMO

   Spot color objects can only be created for PDF-format jobs.

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Job Assistant] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Job Assistant]**.
   - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click **[Job Assistant]**.

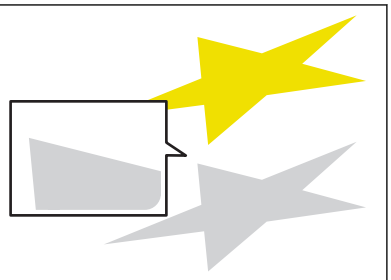
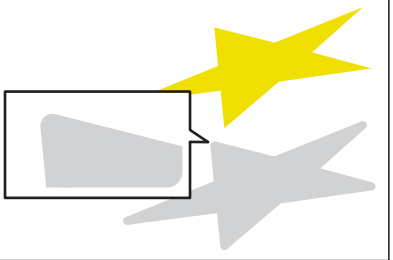
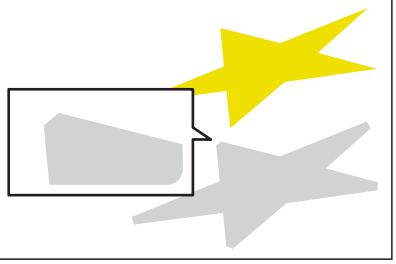
3. **Click the tab.**

4. **Select under [Editing Method].**

5. **In [Type of Spot Color], set [Spot Color] and [Density].**

6. **Click an object to be replaced.**
   You can select multiple shapes. The selection method depends on the OS.

7. **Select the following conditions for [Create Spot Color Object].**

[Corner Shape]	**[Miter]**: Creates a spot color object that maintains the corner shape. However when **[Miter Limit]** is on, then depending on the angle, a spot color object with chamfered corners may be created in the same way as **[Bevel]**.	
	[Round]: Creates a spot color object that rounds the corners.	
	[Bevel]: Creates a spot color object that chamfers the corners.	

[**Miter Limit**] Enabled only when [**Miter**] is selected for [**Corner Shape**].	OFF: Creates a spot color object that maintains the corner regardless of the angle.	
	ON: According to the [**Angle**] setting, a spot color object with chamfered corners is created in the same way as [**Bevel**].	
[**Angle**] Enabled when [**Miter Limit**] is on and [**Offset**] is set to +.	Use the slider to set the [**Angle**] to be chamfered. For example, the more you set the angle to the [**Large**] direction, the wider will be the angle at which chamfering is performed.	–
[**Offset**]	Sets the distance from the outline of the selected shape at which to create the spot color object.	

8. **Click [Create].**

9. **Click [OK].**

10. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**

The [**Initialization Error**] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

Adjusting the Position and Size of Spot Color Plates

Even when the size in the print data is the same, with actual printing contraction of the media, printer tolerances, and other factors may result in misalignment of the spot color plates (white, primer, gloss, etc.). Misalignment of white is particularly noticeable.

When spot color plate misalignment occurs, correct the misalignment by making fine adjustments to the positions or by expanding/reducing the sizes. Print a test pattern in order to decide the correction values.

Depending on the printer, this function may not be displayed.

- **Example 1**

  The white plate is displaced to the lower right. Use [**Position Correction**] to eliminate the misalignment.



- **Example 2**

  The white plate is printed too large. Use [**Size Correction**] to eliminate the misalignment.



Correcting the Position of Spot Color Plates

Correct the position of an image printed using spot color ink.

Depending on the printer, this function may not be displayed.

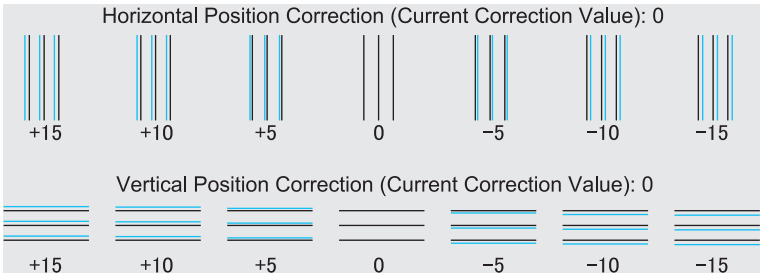
Procedure

1. **Open [Settings] for the job with the misaligned spot color plate.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
2. **Click [Quality].**
3. **Use [Mode] under [Quality Settings] to select the mode including the [Spot Color].**
4. **Use [Special Color] under [Special Color Plate Correction] to select the [Spot Color] to correct.**
5. **Click [Test Print] under [Position Correction].**
6. **Select [Pattern Settings].**

The test pattern has three stages in the plus direction and minus direction from 0 (no correction) in both the scan direction and feed direction. The stages consist of simplified stages that are coarse with units of 5, and detail stages that are fine with units of 1. The following test patterns are expressed using a blue [**Spot Color**].

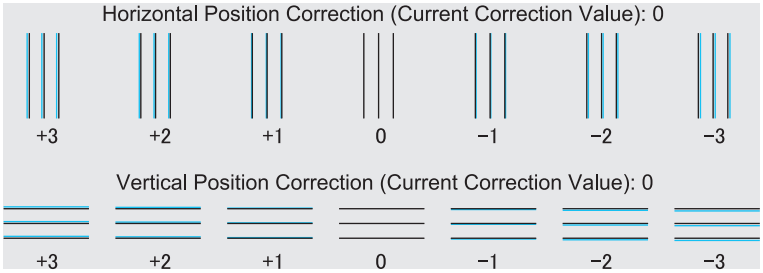
- **[Simple (5)]**

  Select this when misalignment is large (when making rough adjustments to the position misalignment).



- **[Detailed (1)]**

  Select this when misalignment is small (when making detailed adjustments to the position misalignment).

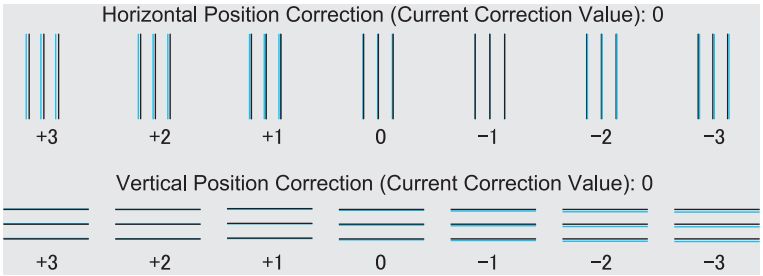


7. **Click [OK].**

A test pattern is printed.

8. **Enter the [Horizontal] and [Vertical] correction values.**

Select the value on the printed test pattern that makes the misalignment between the black line and the [**Spot Color**] line the smallest. Enter the [**Horizontal**] and [**Vertical**] correction values written in the test pattern.



IMPORTANT

The test pattern correction values differ for each job. Set the default values for each job.

9. **Click [OK].**

You are returned to the main window.

When size correction is also necessary, next perform size correction.

Correcting the Size of Spot Color Plates

Correct the size of an image printed using spot color ink.

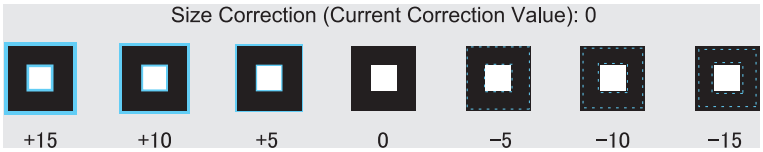
Depending on the printer, this function may not be displayed.

Procedure

1. **Open [Settings] for the job with the misaligned spot color plate.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
2. **Click [Quality].**
3. **Use [Mode] under [Quality Settings] to select the mode including the [Spot Color].**
4. **Use [Special Color] under [Special Color Plate Correction] to select the [Spot Color] to correct.**
5. **Click [Test Print] under [Size Correction].**
6. **Select [Pattern Settings].**

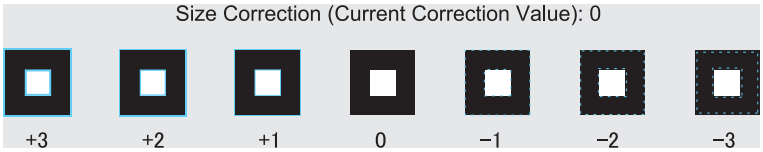
   The stages consist of simplified stages that are coarse with units of 5, and detail stages that are fine with units of 1. The following test patterns are expressed using a blue [**Spot Color**].
   - **[Simple (5)]**

     Select this when size difference is large (when making rough adjustments to the size).

   - **[Detailed (1)]**

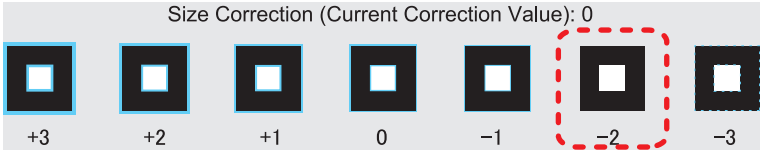
     Select this when size difference is small (when making fine adjustments to the size).

7. **Click [OK].**

   A test pattern is printed.
8. **Enter the correction value in [Size Correction].**

   Select the value on the printed test pattern that makes the size difference between the black frame and the [**Spot Color**] frame the smallest. Enter the [**Size Correction**] value written on the test pattern.



IMPORTANT

The test pattern correction values differ for each job. Set the default values for each job.

9. **Click [OK].**

You are returned to the main window.

Other Spot Color Functions

Replacing or Fine-tuning the Output Color of a [Spot Color]

The output color of [**Spot Color**] can be fine-tuned or replaced as necessary. The recommended methods for adjusting a [**Spot Color**] to match the desired color are using [**Nearest Color Finder**] and finding the desired color from a color chart output from the printer.

- Adjusting the Output Color of a [**Spot Color**]: [**Nearest Color Finder**](P. 275)
- Printing Using the Roland Color System Library(P. 242)

However, when replacing a [**Spot Color**] with a color from a different spot color library, or when making fine adjustments to the color value of a process color, use these methods to change the spot color.

This is a setting that is configured for a specific job. To apply the setting to all subsequently added jobs, configure the settings according to Assigning a Color from Another Spot Color Library to a Newly Created Spot Color Library(P. 270).

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

2. **Click [Color Replacement].**

3. **Click [Details] under [Spot Colors].**
   The [**Spot Color List**] window appears.
   You can check the following information with [**Spot Color List**].

[**Spot Color Name**]	Spot color name used in the job
[**Library Name**]	Name of the library that the [**Spot Color**] is registered in
[**Library Output**]	Color values defined in the library **MEMO** If the spot color is one where the color type is defined in the Lab color space, a caution mark (⚠) is displayed when this color cannot be reproduced (it is out of the gamut) with the selected media and quality.
[**Delta E**]	Color difference values from the reproducible range of colors[*1]
[**Printer Output**]	Process color values to which the spot color has been converted **MEMO** If the [**Spot Color**] is one with a color type defined in the Lab color space, the values converted with the method displayed in the [**Matching Method**] field on the right are displayed.
[**Matching Method**]	When setting multiple [**Spot Color**] at the same time, select with [**Color Replacement**]>[**Matching Method**]. [*2]

*1 Only when the library output color is out of the gamut
*2 Only when the output color is a [**Spot Color**] defined in the Lab color space

4. **Use [Edit Output Color] to change the output color.**

- **[Use Spot Color Library]**

  Select the checkbox, then click [**Use Color Library**] and specify the color for replacement.
- **Specifying the CMYK value directly**

  Change the CMYK value.
- **Changing [Matching Method]**

  The matching method can be changed for a [**Spot Color**] that is defined in the Lab color space. The CMYK values change depending on the selected method.

MEMO

Make adjustments while checking the output result each time you change the color values.

5. **To close the [Spot Color List] window, click [Close].**

IMPORTANT

The converted [**Spot Color**] is not applied to the preview area in [**Settings**] and the main window.

6. **Click [OK].**

You are returned to the main window.

7. **Perform printing.**

Processing by the RIP and printing start.

Assigning a Color from Another Spot Color Library to a Newly Created Spot Color Library

You can create [**Spot Color**] in newly created libraries and assign colors in existing spot color libraries. The procedure for replacing the color of a [**Spot Color**] is the same as Replacing or Fine-tuning the Output Color of a [Spot Color](P. 268), but if you configure the settings in this section, they will be applied to all print data added in the future.

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings].**
2. **Click**  **.**

   The [**Create Spot Color Library**] window appears.
3. **Enter the desired name in [Library Name].**
4. **Select [Color Type].**

   The [**Spot Color**] that can be assigned are determined by the color space selected here.
   - [**Lab**]

     You can assign them to colors of libraries where the color type is Lab, such as DIC or PANTONE.
   - [**CMYK**]

     You can assign them to colors of libraries where the color type is CMYK, such as Roland Color System Library.
   - [**Alias of Special Inks**]

     You can assign them to [**RDG_WHITE**], [**RDG_Gloss**], [**RDG_PRIMER**], [**RDG_MetallicSilver**], or [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**].
5. **Click [OK].**

   A new spot color library is created.
6. **Select the newly created spot color library name and click**  **on the right side of the window.**

   The [**Spot Color**] is added.
7. **Select the added [Spot Color], and then enter the [Spot Color Name].**
8. **Select [Assign Another Spot Color].**
9. **Click [Select].**

   The [**Select Spot Color**] window appears.
10. **Select [Spot Color Library].**
11. **Select the spot color name to be assigned, and then click [OK].**

    The [**Select Spot Color**] window closes.
12. **Click [OK].**

    The [**Spot Color Settings**] window closes, and the created spot color library is saved.

Assigning White/Metallic Silver/Gloss/Primer/Structural to a [Spot Color] in Existing Print Data

Even when white ink, metallic silver ink, gloss ink, structural ink, or primer is specified with a spot color name in existing print data, it cannot be recognized as a [**Spot Color**] if the spot color name is not the spot color name designated by Roland DG Corporation. In this case, create a new spot color library and assign the white ink, metallic silver ink, gloss ink, structural ink, or primer to these spot color names.

For example, even in the case below, [**Spot Color**] can be specified correctly even without making new print data.

- The print data creator assigned original names.
- Print data created for use with RIP software other than VersaWorks is used.

Procedure

1. **Select the print data where the spot color is specified from the job list, and then use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
2. **Click [Color Replacement].**
3. **Make a note of the spot color name that is displayed in [Color Name] under [Spot Colors].**
   Be sure to note the spot color name accurately.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings].**
6. **Click .**
   The [**Create Spot Color Library**] window appears.
7. **Enter the desired name in [Library Name].**
8. **Select [Alias of Special Inks].**
9. **Click [OK].**
   A new spot color library is created.
10. **Select the newly created spot color library name and click + on the right side of the window.**
    The list is added to [**Spot Color Name**].
11. **Enter the spot color name that was noted in Step 3 into [Spot Color Name].**
12. **Select the ink to apply from [Special Ink].**
    Select from [**RDG_WHITE**], [**RDG_Gloss**], [**RDG_PRIMER**], [**RDG_MetallicSilver**], and [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**].

13. **Click [OK].**

You are returned to the main window.

MEMO

To print using the set [**Special Ink**], add the print data to the job list again.

Importing a [Spot Color] and Creating a Spot Color Library

Import a [**Spot Color**] from print data and create a spot color library. Output colors can be assigned to the imported [**Spot Color**].

When output colors are assigned to [**Spot Color**] here, they will be applied to all subsequently added pieces of print data. To apply only to that print data, configure the settings in Replacing or Fine-tuning the Output Color of a [**Spot Color**](P. 268).

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings].**

2. **Click**  **.**

   The [**Create Spot Color Library**] window appears.

3. **Enter the desired name in [Library Name].**

4. **Select [Color Type].**

   The [**Spot Color**] that can be assigned is determined by the color space selected here.

   - [**Lab**]

     You can assign them to colors of libraries where the color type is Lab, such as DIC or PANTONE.
   - [**CMYK**]

     You can assign them to colors of libraries where the color type is CMYK, such as Roland Color System Library.
   - [**Alias of Special Inks**]

     You can assign them to [**RDG_WHITE**], [**RDG_Gloss**], [**RDG_PRIMER**], [**RDG_MetallicSilver**], or [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**].

5. **Click [OK].**

   A new spot color library is created.

6. **Select the newly created spot color library name and click**  **on the right side of the window.**

   The [**Open**] window for selecting the file appears.

7. **Select the print data that contains the [Spot Color] to import, then click [Open].**

   After the [**Spot Color**] is imported, the [**Import Spot Color**] window appears.

8. **Select the [Spot Color] to import and click [OK].**

   The [**Spot Color**] is imported, and then you are returned to the [**Spot Color Settings**] window. The spot color is added to the right side of the window.

9. **As necessary, configure the following settings.**

   - Select the added [**Spot Color**], and then enter the [**Spot Color Name**].
   - Set the color value with [**Define Output Values**] or [**Assign Another Spot Color**].

10. **Click [OK].**

    The [**Spot Color Settings**] window closes, and the created spot color library is saved.

Taking Advantage of TIFF's Extra Channels

Specify [**Structural**], [**White**], [**Gloss**], and other [**Spot Color**] to TIFF's extra channels and print. Note that only one [**Spot Color**] can be specified.

As an example, this section describes how to specify [**Structural**] as an extra channel.

Procedure

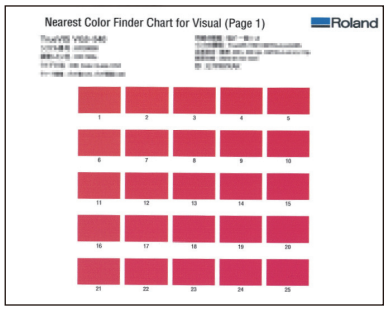
1. **Add TIFF print data with extra channels to the job list.**
2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
3. **Click [Quality].**
4. **Select [Structural] for [Composition] under [Special Channel Composition].**
5. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

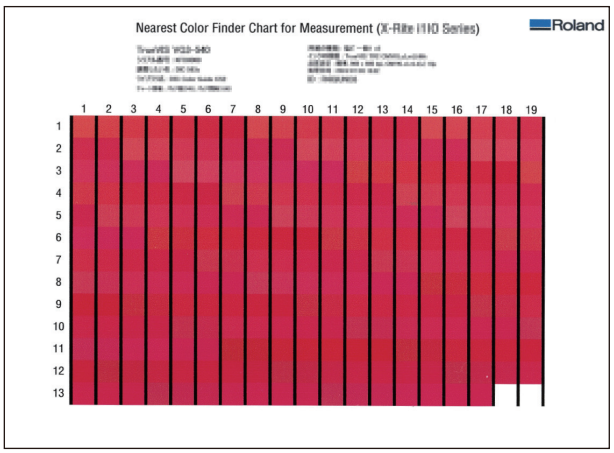
Adjusting the Output Color of a [Spot Color]: [Nearest Color Finder]

If the ink, media, or printer has been changed, the output color of the [**Spot Color**] may not be as intended.

Use [**Nearest Color Finder**] to adjust the output color of the [**Spot Color**]. The [**Spot Color**] to be adjusted can also be specified according to measurement color, [**Spot Color**] in the spot color library, or ink ratio.

First, print the chart of the colors nearest to the [**Spot Color**] used in the job or to the specified [**Spot Color**]. The chart can then be used to find the desired color and apply it to adjust the color to the intended output. There are charts for visualization (left) and charts for measurement (right).





The applied color can be registered in [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] and reused.

Step 1: Printing the [Spot Color] Chart

Procedure

1. **Select the job to set.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Nearest Color Finder] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Nearest Color Finder**].
   - Click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Nearest Color Finder**].

   The [**Spot Color**] included in the job is displayed on the [**Start Nearest Color Finder**] window.

3. **Select the [Spot Color] to adjust.**

   Up to 10 colors can be selected.

   MEMO

   Click [**Change Print Quality**] to change the [**Quality**] item of the job. After changing, click [**OK**] to return to the previous window.

4. **Click [Start].**

   The [**Nearest Color Finder**] window appears. When multiple [**Spot Color**] are selected, the nearest color is set for each [**Spot Color**].

5. **Select one of the following for the color being adjusted.**

- Leave [**Specify Color to Match**] unchecked and proceed to Step 7 if you do not want to specify a color to adjust.
- Proceed to the next operation if you want to specify a color to adjust.
  a. Select the [**Specify Color to Match**] checkbox.
  b. Select the method for specifying the color.
     - [**Measure**]: Specify using a measurement instrument or by inputting the Lab value.
     - [**Library**]: Specify a [**Spot Color**] in a separate spot color library registered in VersaWorks.
     - [**Ink**]: Specify the color value.

6. **Specify the [Chart Format].**

- [**Align for Visualization**]: Prints a chart with the swatches optimally arranged for visual comparison.
- [**Align for Measurement**]: Prints a chart that can be measured by a measurement instrument for color charts.

7. **Specify the [Print Chart].**

- If [**Align for Visualization**] was selected, select [**Swatch Amount**] from the following.
  - [**Few**]: 3 swatches × 3 swatches × 3 pages = 27 swatches
  - [**Standard**]: 5 swatches × 5 swatches × 5 pages = 125 swatches
  - [**Many**]: 7 swatches × 7 swatches × 5 pages = 245 swatches

MEMO

When [**Align for Measurement**] is selected, [**Standard**] will be selected.

- Select [**Swatch Interval**] from the following.
  - [**Small**]
  - [**Standard**]
  - [**Large**]

MEMO

[**Swatch Interval**] is the color difference from the neighboring patch. Selecting [**Small**] makes the color difference smaller. Selecting [**Large**] makes the color difference larger.

8. **Under [Print Chart], click [Print].**

Click [**OK**] in the chart printing confirmation window to print the numbered nearest colors chart. When printing is finished, a chart matching the nearest colors chart that was printed is displayed on the [**Nearest Color Finder**] window.

9. **If multiple [Spot Color] are selected, switch tabs and perform Steps 5 to 8 again to print charts for all of the selected spot colors.**

Step 2: Selecting and Applying the Desired Color

Step 2: Selecting and Applying the Desired Color

When Printing [Align for Visualization] Charts

Procedure

1. **View the nearest colors chart on each tab to check whether it contains the desired color.**

   If it does not, change the settings, and then print the chart again. You can also select a swatch and click [**Print Chart Again**] to print the chart centered on that swatch.

2. **In the [Nearest Color Finder] window, select the desired color.**

   To do so, select the number on the chart with [**Swatch Number**] or select the swatch with the corresponding number on the chart window.

3. **Click [Save to Library].**

   The selected color is applied to the selected spot color on the tab in the [**Start Nearest Color Finder**] window. However, it will not be applied to jobs with a different [**Quality**] setting.

4. **Specify the color on all tabs.**

5. **Click [Exit].**

   The [**Nearest Color Finder**] window closes.

This completes the nearest color finder settings. Output a job and check that the set spot color is output as intended.

When Printing [Align for Measurement] Charts

Procedure

1. **Connect the measurement instrument, and then set up the measurement instrument.**

   Use the measurement instrument specified in [**For Spot and Special Colors**] under [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**]>[**Measurement Instrument**] on the menu bar.

   As necessary, calibrate the measurement instrument or set a chart.

   MEMO

   Mac: [**Preferences**] is displayed as [**Preferences**].

2. **Click [Select with Measurement Instrument] and measure the chart.**

   An asterisk will be displayed for the swatch with the color closest to the color being adjusted.

3. **Click [Save to Library].**

   The selected color is applied to the selected spot color on the relevant tab of the [**Start Nearest Color Finder**] window. However, it will not be applied to jobs with a different [**Quality**] setting.

4. **Specify the color on all tabs.**

5. **Click [Exit].**

The [**Nearest Color Finder**] window closes.

This completes the nearest color finder settings. Output a job and check that the set spot color is output as intended.

Managing the [Nearest Color Finder Library]

Check the results of the saved [**Nearest Color Finder Library**].

The number of libraries that can be saved is not limited, but you can delete any libraries that are no longer necessary.

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Nearest Color Finder Library].**

   The [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] window opens with all results saved in the past displayed.

2. **Check the [Nearest Color Finder Library].**

   The following items are listed. Select a result and click [<] on the right side to display items such as [**Nickname**] and [**Creation Date**], displaying the environment information when the result was saved in the library.

   - [**Spot Color Name**]
   - [**Model Name**]
   - [**Serial Number**]
   - [**Ink Type**]
   - [**Media Name**]
   - [**Print Quality**]
   - [**Resolution**]
   - [**Mode**]
   - [**Printer Profile**]

   MEMO

   Unless all the above nine items have the same values as the printer setting parameters, the corresponding library cannot be used.

3. **If necessary, use the following procedure to filter the results.**

   (1) **Click** .

   The [**Filter Conditions**] window appears.

   (2) **Specify the following conditions.**

   - [**Spot Color Name**]
   - [**Model Name**] and [**Serial Number**]
   - [**Media Name**]

   (3) **Click [OK].**

   The results are filtered according to the specified conditions.

4. **To save the results, perform the following procedure.**

   (1) **Click** .

   (2) **Specify the folder to use as the download location.**

   All results in the library will be downloaded. The data will be saved as a JSON file.

5. **To delete the results, perform the following procedure.**

(1) **Select a result to delete, and then click**  **.**

(2) **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**

The selected result is deleted.

6. **Close the [Nearest Color Finder Library] window.**

Readjusting the Adjustment Results in [Nearest Color Finder Library]

This section explains how to readjust colors for adjusted results.

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Nearest Color Finder Library].**
   The [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] window opens with all results saved in the past displayed.
2. **Select the adjustment results to readjust.**
3. **Click** .
4. **The [Do you want to readjust the selected data?] window appears. Click [Yes].**
5. **Follow the instructions on the [Nearest Color Finder] window to perform adjustment again.**
   For instructions on how to perform adjustment, refer to Step 1: Printing the [**Spot Color**] Chart(P. 275).

Using [Nearest Color Finder Library] in Other Computers

Color adjustment results from a library with the nearest colors can be used with other computers, such as when changing computers or when multiple computers use the same printer.

Procedure

1. **From the computer where the color adjustment results are saved, click [Edit]>[Nearest Color Finder Library] on the menu bar.**

   All previous color adjustment results are displayed.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Specify the folder to use as the download location.**

   All adjustment results in the library will be downloaded. The adjustment results data will be saved as a JSON file.

4. **Save the downloaded data on the computer being used.**

5. **Start VersaWorks and click [Edit]>[Nearest Color Finder Library] on the menu bar.**

6. **Click**  **.**

7. **Specify the folder where the data was saved in Step 4 to import the data.**

   If there is already data in the library, select one of the following.

   - [**Overwrite**]: Import by overwriting with the new adjustment results.
   - [**Skip**]: Do not import adjustment results with the same conditions.
   - [**Cancel**]: Cancel importing of all adjustment results.

8. **Close the [Nearest Color Finder Library] window.**

Using a Spot Color Library

Create and use an original spot color library in a [**Spot Color**] library.

Example of use

1. Assign a spot color name to a color that has not been decided at the time of print data creation and create the data.
2. Create a spot color library and define the spot color name that was created in 1.
3. Add the print data to the job list.
4. Perform printing.

Also, there is no need to recreate the print data when changing the specified [**Spot Color**]. To print again with a different color, use [**Spot Color Settings**] to define one [**Spot Color**] in multiple spot color libraries in advance, and then switch the spot color library you are using.

There are three types of [**Color Type**] for created spot color libraries.

- [**Lab**]

  Specify a [**Spot Color**] using a Lab value. Specify by entering the value directly or by specifying the value measured by the measurement instrument. Select [**Assign Another Spot Color**] to specify any color in all spot color libraries, such as DIC and PANTONE.
- [**CMYK**]

  Specify a [**Spot Color**] using a CMYK value. Select [**Assign Another Spot Color**] to specify any color in the Roland Color System Library.
- [**Alias of Special Inks**]

  Converts a [**Spot Color**] to a white, gloss, primer, metallic silver, or structural spot color ink.

Creating a Spot Color Library

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings].**

2. **Click**  **.**

The [**Create Spot Color Library**] window appears.

3. **Enter the desired name in [Library Name].**

MEMO

The set library name cannot afterwards be changed.

4. **Select [Color Type].**

- [**Lab**]
- [**CMYK**]
- [**Alias of Special Inks**]

MEMO

- To specify Or, Gr, Re, or Mt ink in addition to CMYK, select [**CMYK**] and then turn the desired ink on under [**Additional Color**].

- When using a measurement instrument, be sure to set [**Color Type**] to [**Lab**].
- [**Color Type**] cannot afterwards be changed.

5. **Click [OK].**

A new spot color library is created.

6. **Select the newly created spot color library name and click + on the right side of the window.**

The [**Spot Color**] is added.

7. **Select the added [Spot Color], and then enter the [Spot Color Name].**

IMPORTANT

Be sure that the spot color name entered here and the spot color name in the illustration software are the same. If the names do not match, VersaWorks will not recognize the color as a [**Spot Color**]. Names of spot colors are case-sensitive, so make sure the name is typed correctly.

8. **Specify the [Spot Color] for each [Color Type].**

- [**Lab**]
  - When measuring to decide the Lab value, refer to Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use(P. 14) and prepare the measurement instrument.

    Perform color measurement as directed in the instructions shown on the window. Depending on the type of measurement instrument, it may be necessary to perform calibration in advance.
  - When the Lab value is decided, select [**Define Output Values**] and enter the Lab value.
  - When specifying a [**Spot Color**] that is defined by the Lab value, such as DIC or PANTONE, select [**Assign Another Spot Color**] and click [**Select**] to specify the [**Spot Color**].
- [**CMYK**]
  - When the CMYK value is decided, select [**Define Output Values**] and enter the CMYK value.
  - When specifying a [**Spot Color**] that is defined by the CMYK value, such as Roland Color System Library, select [**Assign Another Spot Color**] and click [**Select**] to specify the [**Spot Color**].
- [**Alias of Special Inks**]

  When converting to a white, gloss, primer, metallic silver, or structural [**Spot Color**], specify the [**Spot Color**] from [**Special Ink**].
  - White: [**RDG_WHITE**]
  - Gloss: [**RDG_Gloss**]
  - Primer: [**RDG_PRIMER**]
  - Metallic silver: [**RDG_MetallicSilver**]
  - Structural: [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**]

9. **Click [OK].**

The settings are saved, and you are returned to the main window.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to click [**OK**]. If you click [**Cancel**], a confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to discard the changes. If you click [**Yes**] in this confirmation window, the window is closed and no changes made to the settings or newly registered [**Spot Color**] are saved.

Saving the Spot Color Library as a File

When using a created spot color library with VersaWorks on a different computer, or when separately managing spot color libraries that were created but are infrequently used, save the spot color library as a spot color file.

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings].**
2. **Select the library to be saved.**
3. **Click**  **.**

   The [**Save As**] window appears.
4. **Enter a file name and save the file.**

   The selected library is saved as a spot color file (.spot).
5. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window.

Importing a Saved Spot Color Library

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings].**
2. **Click** .
3. **Select the saved spot color library (.spot) file and click [Open].**
   The [**Import Spot Color Library**] window appears.
4. **Select the library to import, and then click [OK].**
   The spot color library is added to [**Library List**].
5. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

Deleting a Spot Color Library

Procedure

1. From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings].
2. Select the library to be deleted.
3. Click  .

   MEMO

   A spot color library where [**Attributes**] is [**Preset**] cannot be deleted.

4. Click [OK].

   You are returned to the main window.

Replicating and Editing a Spot Color Library

You can add a new spot color to a spot color library or change the color value.

Replicate the spot color library and change the [**Spot Color**]. You can also add a [**Spot Color**] to a created spot color library.

Here we replicate a spot color library and edit the [**Spot Color**].

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings].**

2. **Select the library to edit, and then click** .

   MEMO

   Editing is not possible when [**Attributes**] is not [**User Defined**]. When replicating a library where [**Attributes**] is [**Preset**], [**Attributes**] changes to [**User Defined**]. For this reason, use this procedure to replicate the library before editing.

   A replicated spot color library is created. The spot color library name is the replicated original library name with (1) added to it. This library name cannot be changed.

3. **Select the [Spot Color] to edit from the replicated library, and then change [Spot Color Name] and change the color value with [Define Output Values].**

4. **Click [OK].**

   The changed settings are saved, and you are returned to the main window.

   IMPORTANT

   Be sure to click [**OK**]. If you click [**Cancel**], a confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to discard the changes. If you click [**Yes**] in this confirmation window, the window is closed and no changes made to the settings are saved.

Switching the Spot Color Library to Use

By switching the spot color library to use, you can replace the [**Spot Color**] without correcting the print data.

Procedure

1. **Create multiple spot color libraries.**

   In each spot color library, define a [**Spot Color**] used with the print data. Creating a Spot Color Library(P. 283)

2. **Use one of the methods below to set the spot color library to use.**

   - Move the spot color library to the top of the list.

     Select the spot color library to use, and then click [**Move Up**]. If you move it to the top-most position of the libraries that define the same [**Spot Color**], the [**Spot Color**] of this top-most library will be specified.

   - Clear the checkboxes of the spot color libraries that will not be used.

     Clear the checkboxes in the [**Select**] field for the spot color libraries that you do not want to use.

3. **Add the print data to the job list.**

   In the job layout area, you can check the job whose [**Spot Color**] has been replaced.

[Spot Color] Usage Examples

Even if the color to be printed has not yet been decided, first create the print data with the spot color names.

Using print data with the spot color names makes it possible to specify different colors for the spot colors in VersaWorks without modifying the print data.

By duplicating a job in the VersaWorks job list, [**Spot Color**] values can be set with [**Settings**], or the [**Spot Color**] values can be set without duplicating the job by creating a spot color library and following the instructions under Switching the Spot Color Library to Use(P. 289).

IMPORTANT

Points to note regarding spot color names

- The spot color name "S" will be replaced by [**RDG_STRUCTURAL**].
  - To stop replacement, click [**Edit**]>[**Spot Color Settings**] on the menu bar, and then turn off [**VersaWorks Default Alias**] in the [Library List].
  - When replacement is stopped, printing will be performed using the color value specified in the design software.
  - When using Dimensor S print data in VersaWorks, make sure [**VersaWorks Default Alias**] is turned on.
    Using Dimensor S Print Data in VersaWorks
- On models with Or, Gr, and Re inks, spot color names such as "Orange," "Green," and "Red" (with the first letter capitalized) will not be recognized as spot colors.
  They will not be displayed in the [**Color Name**] field under [**Spot Colors**] in [**Color Replacement**]. Colors with names such as "orange" or "GREEN" will be recognized.
- Use single-byte alphanumeric characters for spot color names. Print data with spot color names using two-byte characters or some symbols may not be displayed correctly in the [**Color Name**] field under [**Spot Colors**] in [**Color Replacement**].

Specifying [Spot Color] in [Settings]

Procedure

1. **Add the print data where the [Spot Color] was specified to the job list.**
2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].
3. **Click [Color Replacement].**
4. **Select the [Convert Spot Color] checkbox under [Spot Colors].**
   Make sure that the specified spot color name is displayed in the [**Color Name**] field.
5. **Click [Details].**
   The [**Spot Color List**] window appears.
6. **Select the spot color name to be changed from [Spot Color List].**
7. **Select the [Use Spot Color Library] checkbox under [Edit Output Color].**

8. **Use one of the methods below to change the color value of the [Spot Color].**

- **[Use Color Library]**

  Specify the [**Spot Color**] from a spot color library such as [**Roland Color System Library**] or PANTONE.

- **[Specify Lab]**

  Specify the spot color by entering the Lab value directly or by using a measurement instrument to measure the color.

- Specify using CMYK values

  Specify the spot color by entering the CMYK values directly.

9. **Repeat Steps 6 to 8 to change multiple [Spot Color].**

10. **Click [Close].**

The [**Spot Color List**] window closes, and the [**Settings**] window appears.

MEMO

The configured [**Output Color**] is displayed under [**Spot Colors**], but the changed [**Spot Color**] is not reflected in the [**Settings**] window or main preview window.

11. **Click [OK].**

You are returned to the main window.

Special Color

What Is [**Special Color**]? 293
Printing with [**Special Color**] 294
Step 1: Set the [**Special Color**]. 294
Step 2: Performing Printing 296
Other Special Color Functions 297
Saving the Special Color Library as a File 297
Replicating and Editing the Special Color Library 298
Deleting a Special Color Library 299
Registering a Color by Measuring with an Instrument 300
Fine-tuning the Output Color of a [**Special Color**] 302

What Is [Special Color]?

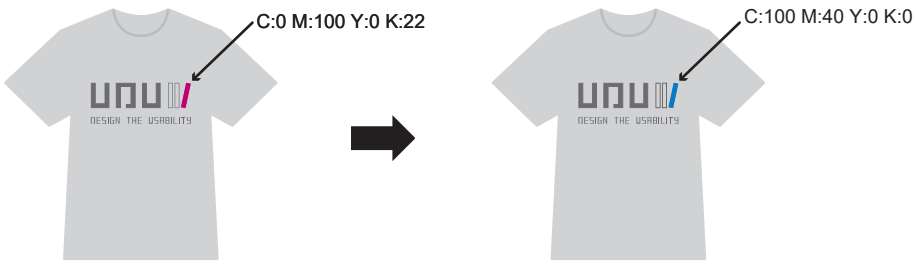
[**Special Color**] are special colors that are used in VersaWorks and are different from the [**Spot Color**] that are widely used in the printing industry. While [**Spot Color**] are recognized based on the color name (such as RVW-BK01A or PANTONE Yellow 012C), [**Special Color**] are recognized based on the color value (such as C: 10, M: 20, Y: 30, K: 0, L: 50, a: 60, and b: 70). VersaWorks detects the specific colors in a job by color value (RGB or CMYK) and replaces them with color values defined in VersaWorks (CMYK or Lab).

MEMO

VersaWorks can only recognize a [**Special Color**] in vector data. Colors used in raster data such as bitmap images cannot be recognized.

Printing with [Special Color]

To use a [**Special Color**] in VersaWorks, first you must register a color (input color: RGB or CMYK) that you want to use as a [**Special Color**] and the color (output color: CMYK or Lab) after replacement in [**Special Color Settings**]. Then check the [**Special Color**] from [**Color Replacement**]>[**Special Color Settings**] and perform printing.



MEMO

When the [**Special Color**] function is used, it is possible to convert the input color to a CMYK value or Lab value, however when the output color after replacement is CMYK, it will not be the target for color matching.

P. 200 Characteristics of Each Matching Method

When printing a color (C: 0, M: 100, Y: 100, K: 0) through the regular workflow, color matching is performed and the ink used may not be exactly (C: 0, M: 100, Y: 100, K: 0). However, when replacement with [**Special Color**] is performed, the output colors are not targeted for color matching and printing will be performed using the specified CMYK values.

Step 1: Set the [Special Color].

Make a note of the colors (RGB or CMYK) in the print data in advance. Then register the colors (CMYK or Lab) after replacement.

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Special Color Settings].**
2. **Click** .

   The [**Create New Special Color Library**] window appears.
3. **Enter the desired name in [Special Color Library Name].**

   MEMO

   The set library name cannot afterwards be changed.
4. **Click [OK].**

   A new special color library is created.
5. **Select the newly created special color library name and click** **on the right side of the window.**

   The [**Input Value**] and [**Output Value**] appear.
6. **Click** **under [Input Value] to select CMYK as the color space.**

7. **Set the CMYK values.**

Here, set the values to (C: 0, M: 100, Y: 100, K: 0).

8. **Click**  **or**  **under [Output Value] to select the color space.**

9. **Set the color values.**

10. **Click [OK].**

The settings are saved, and you are returned to the main window.

IMPORTANT

- Be sure to click [**OK**]. If you click [**Cancel**], a confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to discard the changes. If you click [**Yes**] in this confirmation window, the window is closed and no changes made to the settings are saved.
- As in this example, if you configure the [**Output Value**] as CMYK values, the color will be printed according to the density curve configured in the [**Media Explorer**] window (and not with the [**Matching Method**] setting). This method is useful in situations such as when you want to print a specific color without any impurities. But in this case, the ink limit does not apply. Be cautious of excessive ink usage when printing.

MEMO

You can save the [**Special Color**] displayed in the [**Special Color Settings**] window to a file.

P. 297 Saving the Special Color Library as a File

Step 2: Performing Printing

Check that the [**Special Color**] was recognized correctly, then perform printing.

Procedure

1. **Add print data that contains the [Special Color] to the job list.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click [**Edit Design**]>[**Settings**].
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click [**Settings**].

3. **Click [Color Replacement].**

4. **Select the [Convert Special Color (Value Specified Color)] checkbox.**

[**Input Color**]	The [**Special Color**] used with the job is displayed. MEMO If the output color is a [**Special Color**] defined in the Lab color space, a caution mark (⚠) is displayed when this color cannot be reproduced (it is out of the gamut) with the selected media and quality.
[**Output Color**]	Displays the process color values that the [**Special Color**] has been converted to.

   Click [**Details**] to display the [**Special Color List**] window. You can use this window to check [**Special Color**] details and to replace [**Special Color**].

5. **Configure the media settings and other such settings necessary for printing.**

6. **Click [OK].**
   You are returned to the main window.

7. **Perform printing.**
   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

MEMO

- For [**Special Color**] whose output colors are defined in the Lab color space, select the color matching method from [**Matching Method**]. Color matching is performed according to this setting. (The [**Color Settings**]>[**Matching Method**] setting under [**Color Management**] will be ignored.)
- You can also enable [**Convert Special Color (Value Specified Color)**] by clicking [**Color Replacement**] in the [**Queue Properties**] window. In this case, [**Special Color**] conversion will be performed even if you do not enable this function in the [**Settings**] window.

Other Special Color Functions

Saving the Special Color Library as a File

When using a created special color library with VersaWorks on a different computer, or when separately managing special color libraries that were created but are infrequently used, save the special color library as a special color file.

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Special Color Settings].**

2. **Select the name of the special color library to be saved, and then click** .

   The [**Save As**] window appears.

3. **Enter a file name and save the file.**

   The selected library is saved as a special color file (.spec).

   MEMO

   You can click to open saved special color files.

4. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the main window.

Replicating and Editing the Special Color Library

New [**Special Color**] can be added to a created special color library, and the color values can be changed.

After creating a special color library, leave it as is and replicate it to change the [**Special Color**]. You can also add a [**Special Color**] to a created special color library.

Here, we replicate a special color library and edit the [**Special Color**] in anticipation of exporting the special color library.

Procedure

1. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Special Color Settings].**

2. **Select the library to edit, and then click** .

   A replicated special color library is created. The special color library name is the replicated original library name with (1) added to it. This library name cannot be changed.

3. **Select a replicated [Special Color] and then change [Input Value] and [Output Value].**

4. **Click [OK].**

   The changed settings are saved, and you are returned to the main window.

   IMPORTANT

   Be sure to click [**OK**]. If you click [**Cancel**], a confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to discard the changes. If you click [**Yes**] in this confirmation window, the window is closed and no changes made to the settings are saved.

Deleting a Special Color Library

Procedure

1. From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Special Color Settings].
2. Select the special color library that you want to delete.
3. Click  .
4. Click [OK].
   You are returned to the main window.

Registering a Color by Measuring with an Instrument

Register the Lab value of a color measured with a measurement instrument as the output color of a [**Special Color**] in cases such as when you have a printing sample. This assumes that an input color already exists.

However, to register a measured color, assign a name and register it as a [**Spot Color**]. For more information, refer to Creating a Spot Color Library(P. 283).

Procedure

1. **Connect the measurement instrument.**

   Use the measurement instrument specified in [**For Spot and Special Colors**] on the [**Measurement Instrument**] tab from [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.

   MEMO

   Mac: [**Preferences**] is displayed as [**Preferences**].

2. **From the menu bar, click [Edit]>[Special Color Settings].**

3. **Click**  **.**

   The [**Create New Special Color Library**] window appears.

4. **Enter the desired name in [Special Color Library Name].**

5. **Click [OK].**

   A new special color library is created.

6. **Select the name of the newly created special color library.**

7. **Click**  **on the right side of the window.**

   The input colors and output colors are displayed.

8. **Under [Input Value], click**  **(RGB) or**  **(CMYK) to specify the color space of the input color, and then enter the color values.**

9. **Under [Output Color], click**  **(Lab).**

10. **Perform color measurement as directed in the instructions shown on the window.**

    - Depending on the type of measurement instrument, it may be necessary to perform calibration in advance.
    - The Lab value is displayed when the measurement is finished.

11. **Click [OK].**

    The measured color is saved, and you are returned to the main window.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to click [**OK**]. If you click [**Cancel**], a confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to discard the changes. If you click [**Yes**] in this confirmation window, the window is closed and no changes made to the settings are saved.

Fine-tuning the Output Color of a [Special Color]

When the color that is actually output is slightly different than the color that was measured, fine-tune the output color of the **[Special Color]**.

Procedure

1. **Select the job to fine-tune.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Settings] window.**
   - Double-click the job to set.
   - Right-click the job to set, and then click **[Edit Design]**>**[Settings]**.
   - With a job selected, click ⌄ on the left side of the job tool area, and then click **[Settings]**.

3. **Click [Color Replacement].**

4. **Click [Details] under [Special Color Settings].**
   The **[Special Color List]** window appears.
   You can check the following information:

[Input Color]	RGB or CMYK values of the defined **[Special Color]**
[Library Name]	Name of the library that the **[Special Color]** is registered in
[Library Output]	Color values defined in the library MEMO If the output color is a **[Special Color]** defined in the Lab color space, a caution mark (⚠) is displayed when this color cannot be reproduced (it is out of the gamut) with the selected media and quality.
[Delta E]	Color difference values from the reproducible range of colors*1
[Printer Output]	Process color values to which the **[Special Color]** has been converted MEMO If the output color is a **[Special Color]** defined in the Lab color space, the values converted with the method displayed in the **[Matching Method]** field on the right are displayed.
[Matching Method]	When setting multiple **[Special Color]** at the same time, select with **[Color Replacement]**>**[Matching Method]**. *2

   *1 Only when the library output color is out of the gamut
   *2 Only when the output color is a **[Special Color]** defined in the Lab color space

5. **Use [Edit Output Color] to change the output color.**
   - **When using a color from a different spot color library**
     Select the **[Select color from Roland Color System Library]** checkbox, then click **[Select]** and specify the color for replacement.
   - **Specifying the CMYK value directly**

Change the CMYK value.

- **Changing [Matching Method]**

  Select from [**Matching Method**]. However, this change is only available when the [**Spot Color**] is one defined in the Lab color space.

MEMO

Make adjustments while checking the output result each time you change the color values.

6. **Click [Close].**

   The [**Special Color List**] window closes.

7. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Settings**] window closes.

8. **Perform printing.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing start.

Appendix

Function List

Menu Bar List 306
- [File] 306
- [Edit] 307
- [View] 310
- [Help] 311

Hamburger Menu List 312

[Settings] List 314
- [Layout] 314
- [Quality] 316
- [Color Management] 320
- [Color Replacement] 325
- [Mark] 326
- [Printer Controls] 329
- [Cut Controls] 332
- [Job Management] 334
- [Clip and Tile] 336
- [Variable Data] 338
- [Customize] 341

Menu Bar List

This is a list of items in the menu bar that is displayed at the top of the VersaWorks window. The settings here are valid throughout VersaWorks (all printers, queue folders, and jobs).

The Mac menu bar has the [**Apple menu**] and [**VersaWorks 7**]. [**VersaWorks 7**] contains the following menu items.

Item	Description
[**About VersaWorks...**]	Displays the VersaWorks version information.
[**Preferences**]	Same contents as [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].
[**Exit**]	Exits VersaWorks.

[File]

Item	Description	Refer to
[**Find Job**]	You can list all the jobs and search for them in VersaWorks.	P. 38 Searching for Jobs
[**Exit**]*1	Exit VersaWorks.	

*1 Windows only

[Edit]

Item	Description	Refer to
[Spot Color Settings]	A list of the preset [**Spot Color Library Name**] (Roland spot colors, DIC, TOYO, PANTONE). With VersaWorks, [**Spot Color**] other than Roland spot colors are replaced with CMYK for printing. You can create, delete, and duplicate spot color libraries, as well as assign and convert [**Spot Color**].	P. 236 Spot Color
[Nearest Color Finder Library]	The [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] list appears. You can delete unnecessary results as well as readjust them and use them on other computers.	P. 275 Adjusting the Output Color of a [**Spot Color**]: [**Nearest Color Finder**]
[Special Color Settings]	Displays a list of special color library names. Detects the specific colors in a job by color value (RGB or CMYK) and replaces them with color values defined in VersaWorks.	P. 292 Special Color
[Simulation Profile Management]	Configures a profile to match the output colors of different printer models.	P. 214 Matching Different Printer Output Colors
[Variable Data Template Management]	Creates area and layout templates for use in variable printing. You can duplicate, export, or delete created templates.	P. 120 What Is Variable Printing?
[**Preferences**] or [**Preferences**]* * Depending on the language, these may be the same.	This is composed of five tabs ([**General**], [**RIP and Print**], [**Measurement Instrument**], [**Update**], and [**Linking**]) and configures the overall settings of VersaWorks.	
[**General**]	Configures general settings such as [**Language and Unit**] and [**Preview**].	
[**Language and Unit**]	You can set the language and unit to display in VersaWorks. After the language is changed, you have to restart VersaWorks.	
[**Language**]	Select the display language from [English], [Chinese_Simplified], [Chinese_Traditional], [French], [German], [Italian], [Japanese], [Korean], [Portuguese], [Spanish], [Russian], [Turkish], or [Arabic]. Default value: Language selected at the time of installation	
[**FontSize**]	Select [**Large**], [**Standard**], or [**Small**]. Default value: [**Standard**]	
[**Unit**]	Select the display unit from [**mm**], [**cm**], and [**inch**]. Default value: [**mm**]	
[**Theme**]	Select [**Dark**] or [**Light**] for the window theme. Default value: [**Dark**]	
[**Preview**]	You can select the quality of the preview image from [**High Quality**], [**Standard**], and [**Low Quality**]. Default value: [**Standard**]	
[**Quality**]		
[**Enable Monitor Proofing**]	When this checkbox is selected, the colors in the preview display will be closer to those in the printed materials. Default value: Cleared	
[**Monitor Profile**]	Select the RGB profile to display the preview with colors that closely approximate the actual output colors. Select from the AdobeRGB1998.icc, sRGB Color Space Profile.icm, or Roland icc profile.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Queue]	You can display the queue folder name (A, B, C, ...) in the preview image. Default value: Selected	P. 16 Hiding the Queue Folder Identification in the Layout Window
[Show Queue Identifier in Layout Window]		
[RIP and Print]	Configures settings related to the RIP and print processing.	
[RIP Speed Settings]	When multiple printers are connected to VersaWorks, you can set the number of RIP processing operations to perform simultaneously. Default value: 1 (when only one printer is registered) or 2 to 4 (when multiple printers are registered)	P. 8 Setting the Number of Simultaneous RIP Processing Operations
[Max. # of concurrent RIP processes]		
[Memory Amount]	Adjusts the amount of the computer's memory that is used during print data importing, processing by the RIP, and output. Default value: 1024 MB	P. 15 Increasing Memory
[Print Options]	Sets the print count and the warning when the amount of remaining ink is low.	
[Max. # of Concurrent Outputs]	Sets the number of printers where output will be performed simultaneously. Default value: 1	P. 9 Setting the Number of Simultaneous Printing Operations
[Configure Advanced Print Settings]	When this checkbox is cleared, the specified job is printed only once at all times without specifying the print count. Default value: Selected	P. 10 Printing Only Once at All Times
[Show warning about ink shortage on print command]	A warning is displayed at print start when the amount of ink remaining is low. Default value: Selected	P. 11 Setting Warning Displays According to the Amount of Remaining Ink
[Measurement Instrument]	Sets the type of measurement instrument to use in [**For Color Charts**], [**For Spot and Special Colors**], and [**For Printer Color Matching**].	P. 14 Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use
[For Color Charts]	Select the model to perform color chart measurement for. Select from [X-Rite i1Pro / Pro 2 / Pro 3], [X-Rite i1Pro 3 Plus], [X-Rite i1iO / iO 2 / iO 3], [X-Rite i1iO 3 Plus], [X-Rite i1iSis], [Barbieri Spectro LFP qb], and [Barbieri Spectro pad]. Default value: [X-Rite i1Pro / Pro 2 / Pro 3]	
[Model]		
[For Spot and Special Colors]	Specifies the model to use when creating or adjusting a [**Spot Color**] or [**Special Color**] to reproduce the desired color. Select from [X-Rite i1Pro / Pro 2 / Pro 3], [X-Rite i1Pro 3 Plus], [Barbieri Spectro LFP qb Spectral unit], and [Barbieri Spectro pad]. Default value: [X-Rite i1Pro / Pro 2 / Pro 3]	
[Model]		

Item	Description	Refer to
[For Printer Color Matching]	Specifies the model to use for the printer color match function that matches output colors which are slightly different with each printer. Select **[VW-S1]***1 or **[Use [For Color Charts]]**. Default value: **[Use [For Color Charts]]**	
[Model]		
[Update]	Automatically obtains VersaWorks updates and notifies the user. Default value: Selected	P. 19 Update
[Update Settings]		
[Check for Updates Automatically and Notify]		
[Linking]	Links with external applications. Default value: Selected	P. 18 Checking the Link Settings with External Applications
[Linking]		
[Link with External Application]		

*1 Windows only

[View]

Item	Description	Refer to
[Job Log]	You can view the information about jobs processed in VersaWorks, such as their content log and the date and time when they were processed. Jobs can be sorted and filtered in this window, and more detailed information can also be checked.	P. 39 Checking and Managing the Job Log Information

[Help]

Item	Description
[**Show Help**]	Opens the website where the VersaWorks manuals (Installation Guide, First Step Guide, Master Guide, and FAQ) can be viewed.
[**Download Center**]	Opens the [**Download Center**] website for downloading software and viewing manuals.
[**Roland DG Connect**]	Opens the [**Roland DG Connect**] website, which provides functions and services for bidirectional sharing of information such as for printer operation management.
[**Check for Updates**]	Displays the update information.
[**License Authentication**]	Displays the license authentication status. If the license has not been authenticated, follow the on-screen instructions and authenticate the license.
[**About VersaWorks...**][*1]	Displays the VersaWorks version information.

*1 Windows only

Hamburger Menu List

This is a list of the items in the hamburger menu displayed on the right side of each printer tab. The settings here are valid on the applicable printers.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Printer Color Match (Extended)]	Configures color matching for the same model or for different models. This function is available as a purchasable add-on.	P. 217 Using the Color Matching Function (Add-on)
[Printer Color Match (Basic)]	Adjust for variation in the output colors resulting from changes over time with the same model or from individual differences with different machines of the same model.	P. 206 Obtaining a Stable Output Color
[Media Explorer]	Manages information about the media used for printing.	P. 168 Using Existing Media
[Workpiece Information Management]	Manages the printing area for each shape of the cylindrical printer. You can create new shape data, delete shape data, duplicate shape data, acquire shape data automatically from the printer, and perform similar actions.	P. 153 Printing with a Cylindrical Printer
[Print Roland Color System Library]	Prints the color system library. Color samples of other metallic inks (Metallic Color System Library), orange ink color samples (Orange Color System Library), green ink color samples(Green Color System Library), red ink color samples(Red Color System Library), metallic ink and gloss texture charts, and others are available.	P. 242 Printing Using the Roland Color System Library
[Color Chart Type-1]	Prints the Color Chart. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added. The Color Chart is a chart that categorizes the colors in the library by saturation, and arranges them to vary in hue in the horizontal direction and in brightness in the vertical direction. To print this color chart in its original size, you need A1-size or larger media. Select Type-1 or Type-2.	
[Color Chart Type-2]		
[Color Selector]	Prints [**Color Selector**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added. The [**Color Selector**] is the ink combination chart. The chart shows the ink combination used for printing each spot color. Although each page is printed in A4 size, you can cut the pieces along the trimming marks and bind them in numeric order (outline numbers) to create a color sample book that can be used to compare the colors.	
[Color Chips]	Prints 12 color chips per color for 5 colors in A4 size. The colors are categorized by color tone. Click [**Color Chips**] and click the tone name to print the color chips for the selected tone. With printers that are equipped with a cutting function, cutting is performed for each color to create a seal color sample book.	
[Pure Color 1]	Prints [**Pure Color 1**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.	
[Pure Color 2]	Prints [**Pure Color 2**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.	
[Strong]	Prints [**Strong**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.	

Item		Description	Refer to
	[Deep]	Prints [**Deep**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.	
	[Dark]	Prints [**Dark**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.	
	[Dark Grayish]	Prints [**Dark Grayish**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.	
	[Black]	Prints [**Black**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.	
[Test Print]		Performs a test print of the job designated by VersaWorks. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.	VW7 First Step Guide
[Test Cut]		Performs a test cut of the data designated by VersaWorks after test printing.	
[Send Native File]		Printing is performed using a [**Native file**] (the file where data that was processed by the RIP is saved).	P. 88 Printing Using the [**Native file**]

[Settings] List

This is a list of [**Settings**] items. Depending on the model you are using and the print data, some items may not be displayed. The items which cannot be selected may vary depending on the job, other selected items, and other factors.

[Layout]

Configures the settings related to the printing area and job layout. The items that can be selected vary depending on the model.

Item	Description	Refer to
[**Media Settings**]	Sets the media size.	
[**Size**]	Selects the media type.	P. 44 Setting the Size of the Material
[**Get Media Width**]	Information about the printable area is acquired from the printer and [**W**] is set automatically. On the flat-bed model, [**W**] and [**H**] are set automatically.	
[**W**]	[**W**] is set manually.	
[**H**]	[**H**] is set manually.	
[**Workpiece Information Settings**]	With a cylindrical printer, this menu item is displayed in place of [**Media Settings**].	P. 153 Printing with a Cylindrical Printer
[**Dot Shape**]	Selects the data registered with [**Workpiece Information Management**].	
[**Scaling**]	These settings are used for printing with the job enlarged or reduced. Default value: 100%	P. 45 Zooming In / Zooming Out P. 54 Changing the Ratio of the Image Width to Height
[**W**]	Enlarges or reduces the job to the specified size. Click  to change the icon to  and enable the changing of the ratio of the image width to height.	
[**H**]		
[**Scale**]	Enlarges or reduces the job by the specified scaling factor.	
[**Restore Original Ratio**]	Returns to the original ratio. The window for selecting the reference appears, so select [**Width**] or [**Height**].	
[**Reset ALL**]	Returns to the original ratio and size.	
[**Fit to Media Size**]	Automatically enlarges or reduces the job to match the paper size set in [**Media Settings**]. The scaling factor changes depending on the job orientation specified with [**Orientation**] under [**Print Properties**]. The horizontal to vertical ratio cannot be changed.	
[**Position**]	Sets the job printing position.	P. 46 Setting the Printing Position

Item	Description	Refer to
[X]	The job is moved by the specified offset in relation to the upper-left corner (origin) of the media in the preview image (the lower-right corner of the set media). [X] sets the right distance and [Y] sets the downward distance.	
[Y]		
[Center on the Media]	When using roll media, the job is moved to the horizontal center of the media. When using sheet media or standard-size media, the job is moved to the horizontal and vertical center of the media.	
[Print Properties]	Sets the number of copies to print, print spacing, image mirror, and printing direction.	
[Copy]	Sets the number of copies to print. Default value: 1	P. 47 Setting the Number of Copies to Print
[Page Range]	Specifies the page to print when printing print data that is composed of multiple pages.	
[from]		
[to]		
[Tile Spacing]	You can set the spacing between adjacent images when tiling and printing multiple images. Default value: [Equal X and Y Spacing]	P. 48 Setting the Spacing from the Adjacent Image
[Equal X and Y Spacing]	Specifies the spacing between adjacent images. The same value is specified for the vertical and horizontal spacings.	
[Separate X and Y Spacing]	Specifies the spacing between adjacent images. Different values are specified for the vertical and horizontal spacings.	
[Grid Spacing]	Specifies the value that is the addition of the image size and the spacing between adjacent images. The width and height values can be specified separately.	
[Spacing]	Displayed when [Equal X and Y Spacing] is selected. Default value: 4 mm (0.16 in.)	
[X]	Displayed when [Separate X and Y Spacing] is selected.	
[Y]		
[W]	Displayed when [Grid Spacing] is selected.	
[H]		
[Mirror]	Reverses the image when printing. This is set in cases such as printing on transparent media when the image will be viewed from the opposite side of the printed surface.	P. 50 Mirroring the Image
[Orientation]	Specifies the direction of the printed image. Dark gray indicates a selectable direction, and the selected print direction is displayed in blue.	P. 51 Rotating the Image
[EPS]	Sets the margins for data that contains cutting lines (cutting data).	
[Margin]		

[Quality]

Configures print quality and spot color plate settings for a job.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Quality Settings]	Sets the printing quality in detail.	
[Media Type]	Sets the media type.	P. 158 What Is Media?
[Print Quality]	Select the printing quality. This determines the resolution. The resolution is displayed according to the model. Default value: [**Standard**] or [**Production**]	
[Artistic]		
[High Quality]		
[Standard] or [Production]		
[High Speed]		
[Draft]		
[Resolution]	This is decided according to the selected [**Media Type**] and [**Print Quality**].	
[Mode]	The selectable items vary depending on the machine ink type and the selected [**Media Type**] and [**Print Quality**]. This lists the typical items for CMYK inks and spot color inks. The "p" in items such as "6p" and "8p" means "passes." When the number of passes is higher, the print head performs a larger number of passes for the same image. This results in finer drawing and improves image quality, however it increases the printing time. (v) prints in variable dot modes (modes that use dots of varying sizes). HD is a mode that has a higher Wh ink density than White(v).	
CMYK(v)	This prints using CMYK inks only.	
White -> CMYK(v)	This prints first with Wh ink followed by CMYK inks. This allows printing that is not affected by the media color, such as with transparent media.	
CMYK -> White(v)	This prints first with CMYK inks followed by Wh ink. This is used in cases such as printing on transparent media when the image will be viewed from the opposite side of the printed surface.	
White(v)	This prints using Wh ink only.	
White(v) HD	This prints with higher density Wh ink compared to White.	
CMYK -> MatteVarnish(v)	Printing with CMYK inks and gloss ink is performed in a single pass. The CMYK color inks are overprinted by the gloss ink. The gloss ink has a matte finish.	
GlossVarnish(v)	This performs gloss-finish printing with gloss ink. Overprinting with gloss ink is performed after printing with Wh ink and CMYK inks is completed. Printing using only gloss ink is also possible.	
MatteVarnish(v)	This performs matte-finish printing with gloss ink. Overprinting with gloss ink is performed after printing with white ink and CMYK inks is completed. Printing using only gloss ink is also possible.	

Item	Description	Refer to
Embossing(v)	This performs embossed-finish printing with gloss ink. Embossing with gloss ink is performed after printing with white ink and CMYK inks is completed. The ink thickness is determined by the number in [**Quality Settings**]>[**Details**]>[**Overprint**]. Embossed printing using only gloss ink is also possible.	P. 137 Printing Multiple Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other
Primer1(v)	This prints only using the primer. The texture of the finish and ink adhesion are different between Primer 1 and Primer 2. You can also perform printing using Primer 1 and Primer 2 in turns. Overlaying Primer 1 and Primer 2 may result in different effects in the texture or adhesion from the case where they are used individually for printing. The texture and adhesion may vary depending on the media to be used. Select an appropriate type according to their properties.	
Primer2(v)		
Primer -> CMYK(v)	Printing with primer ink and CMYK inks is performed in a single pass. The primer ink is overprinted by the CMYK color inks.	
Primer -> White(v)	Printing with primer ink and Wh ink is performed in a single pass. The primer ink is overprinted by the white ink.	
CMYK -> Wh -> CMYK	Use this item when you want to, for example, print on transparent film and display the printed document from both the printed surface and the opposite surface.	
Pr -> Wh -> CMYK	Use this item when you want to, for example, improve the adhesion of ink to media that peels off easily and print vibrant images on a base of white ink.	
Pr -> CMYK -> Wh	Use this item when you want to, for example, improve the adhesion of ink to media that peels off easily, print vibrant images on a base of white ink, and display the images from the surface opposite the printed surface (the transparent surface).	
Wh -> CMYK -> Gl	Use this item when you want to, for example, print images on a base of white ink, eliminate the effect of the media's color, and add textures and other expressions.	
[**Details**]	Specifies the screen, interpolation, and other advanced settings. Click ▸ to display the details window.	
[**Halftone**]	Sets the screen (angled screen) shape method.	P. 69 Setting the Halftone
[**Dither**]	A screening method that uses a specific dithering pattern to yield fast processing by the RIP.	
[**Error Diffusion**]	Images are printed with finer details. The time required for processing by the RIP is longer than when [Dither] is used.	
[**Halftone Options**]	This item is only enabled when the [**Angled Screen**] setting is included in the mode to use for printing.	
[**Interpolation**]	Sets the interpolation used when scaling an image. Default value: [**Nearest Neighbor**]	P. 70 Selecting the Interpolation Used for Scaling
[**Nearest Neighbor**]	Lowest quality, but the processing speed is high.	
[**Bi-Linear**]	Standard quality and processing speed.	
[**Bi-Cubic**]	High quality but low processing speed.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Direction]	Sets the print direction of the print head.	P. 71 Setting the Direction of the Print Head
[Uni-Direction]	Printing will only be performed in the outbound pass (depending on the model, printing may only be performed in the return pass). Total printing time is longer but the quality is higher.	
[Bi-Direction]	When the print head moves, printing will be performed in both the outbound pass and return pass.	
[Ignore Default Settings]	Select this checkbox to enable the setting of the print head's movement speed and the number of times to perform overprinting. Default value: Cleared	
[Head Speed]	Sets the print head's movement speed during printing.	P. 72 Setting the Print Head Speed
[Overprint]	Sets the number of times to print in the same location.	P. 116 Performing Overprinting: [Overprint]
[RIP Setting]	Sets the [Bit Depth]. Default value: [8-bit]	P. 152 Printing with Smooth Gradations
[Bit Depth]		
[Special Color Plate Generation]	When there is a [Spot Color] that is not used in print data, you can generate spot color plates (white, gloss, primer, metallic silver, and structural) in VersaWorks. You cannot generate spot color plates with print data where all of [RDG_WHITE], [RDG_GLOSS], [RDG_PRIMER], [RDG_MetallicSilver], and [RDG_STRUCTURAL] are used in the illustration software. When [RDG_WHITE], [RDG_GLOSS], [RDG_PRIMER], [RDG_MetallicSilver], or [RDG_STRUCTURAL] is used, spot color plates can be generated only for the unused [Spot Color].	P. 255 Generation of Spot Color Plates (White, Gloss, Primer, Etc.)
[Special Color]	Generate spot color plates. You can select a [Spot Color] in [Quality Settings]>[Mode].	
[Generate Special Color Plate]	The checkbox is active when the [Spot Color] selected with [Quality Settings]>[Mode] is not used in print data.	
[Generated Pattern]	Specifies the location to generate the spot color plate. Default value: [Print Area (Object-Based)]	P. 257 Generating Spot Color Plates
[Print Area (Object-Based)]	The plate is generated below the objects.	
[Print Area (Color-Based)]	However, with [Print Area (Color-Based)], the spot color plate is not generated for objects with C: 0, M: 0, Y: 0, and K: 0 or with R: 255, G: 255, and B: 255.	
[Outside Print Area (Object-Based)]	The plate is generated in a location where no objects are present.	
[Outside Print Area (Color-Based)]	However, with [Outside Print Area (Color-Based)], the spot color plate is also generated for objects with C: 0, M: 0, Y: 0, and K: 0 or with R: 255, G: 255, and B: 255.	
[Entire Image]	The plate is generated for the entire job size.	
[Density]	Specifies the spot color plate density.	
[Special Color Plate Correction]	Specifies the position and size correction values for the spot color plate. You can select a [Spot Color] in [Quality Settings]>[Mode].	P. 264 Adjusting the Position and Size of Spot Color Plates

Item	Description	Refer to
[Special Color]	Selects the spot color plate to correct.	
[Position Correction]	First click [**Test Print**], then select either [**Simple (5)**] or [**Detailed (1)**] and click [**OK**]. Based on the test printing results, enter [**Horizontal**] and [**Vertical**] correction values. • Select [**Simple (5)**] to make rough corrections. • Select [**Detailed (1)**] to make detailed corrections.	P. 264 Correcting the Position of Spot Color Plates
[Horizontal]		
[Vertical]		
[Test Print]		
[Size Correction]	First click [**Test Print**], then select either [**Simple (5)**] or [**Detailed (1)**] and click [**OK**]. Based on the test printing results, enter the [**Size Correction**] value. • Select [**Simple (5)**] to make rough corrections. • Select [**Detailed (1)**] to make detailed corrections.	P. 266 Correcting the Size of Spot Color Plates
[Test Print]		
[Structural Ink Settings]	Change to [**Spot Color**] to switch the locations that will be printed on with structural ink (locations that will not expand), as specified in the print data, to locations that will not be printed on with structural ink (locations that will expand).	P. 149 Printing Using Structural Ink
[Foaming Area]		
[Non-spot Color]		
[Spot Color]		
[Special Channel Composition]	• When a mode including a WHITE or GLOSS [**Spot Color**] is specified for a composed job, the corresponding [**Spot Color**] is selected. • Specify [**Structural**], [**White**], [**Gloss**], and other spot colors to TIFF's extra channels and print.	P. 144 Composing TIFF Image Print Data: [**Compose Job**] P. 274 Taking Advantage of TIFF's Extra Channels
[Composition]		
[No Use]		
[White]		
[Gloss]		
[Primer]		
[Structural]		

[Color Management]

Performs [**Color Settings**] and [**Level Adjustment**].

Item	Description	Refer to
[**Color Settings**]	Configures the color management initial settings.	
[**Preset**]	Select [**Color Settings**].	• P. 190 Visually Selecting the Color Settings: [**Quick Setup**] • P. 192 Selecting the Color Setting from the List
[**True Rich Color ***]	Different colors are expressed by [**Brightness**] and [**Vibrancy**].	
[**True Rich Color 3**]	Despite its high-saturation output, it has a wide color gamut, more naturally producing colors such as gray and peach. [**True Rich Color 2**] is enabled only for CMYK images. [**True Rich Color 3**] is enabled for both CMYK and RGB images. [**True Rich Color 3**] with the broader color gamut is recommended. Select the same color setting when you set [**True Rich Color**] or [**True Rich Color 2**] before updating VersaWorks and want to output the same color.	
[**True Rich Color 2**]		
[**True Rich Color**]		
[**Prepress general**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments.	
[**Prepress U.S.**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in the United States.	
[**Prepress EURO**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in Europe.	
[**Japan Color**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in Japan.	
[**MAX Impact**]	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.	
[**Sign & Display**]	Does not use the profile embedded in the image data (the profile specified by the image data). You can obtain good results by selecting this setting when you want to print dark colors over the entirety of signs.	
[**MAX Density U.S.**]	Color conversion just for the illustration is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. You can obtain good results by selecting this setting when you make the color density a priority.	
[**MAX Density Japan**]	Color conversion just for the illustration is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. This setting is almost the same as [**MAX Density U.S.**], but output is performed while preserving the primary colors.	
[**Density Control Only**]	Color conversion is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. The amount of ink is limited, so the ink does not overflow.	
[**Custom**]	You can select the input profile and the matching method (color conversion) settings individually.	
[**Custom High-Performance**]	You can select the input profile and the matching method (color conversion) settings individually. This assumes high performance.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Full Page Conversion Mode]	Applies the same matching method for both raster and vector objects.	
[Quick Setup...]	Visually select the color setting from seven color settings using [**Brightness**] and [**Vibrancy**].	P. 190 Visually Selecting the Color Settings: [Quick Setup]
[Load...]	Loads a saved Roland Color Simulation file (.rcs).	
[Save...]	Saves the set [**Color Settings**] and [**Simulation Target Profiles**] (Roland Color Simulation file (.rcs)).	
[Advanced Settings]		
[Use Embedded ICC Profile]	Select this checkbox to use the profile embedded in the image data for color conversions (if such a profile is available). Default value: Off	
[Raster]	Sets the [**Matching Method**] and [**Simulation Target Profiles**] for the image.	P. 201 Specifying Color Settings for Each Object
[Matching Method]	Sets the color matching method. Default value: [**Colorimetric**]	
[Perceptual]	Converts colors while maintaining tonal balance. The color values are changed, but their values relative to each other remain the same. This setting is suitable for photographic images.	
[Colorimetric]	Converts colors with emphasis on brightness. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same brightness within the printer's color gamut.	
[Saturation]	Converts colors with emphasis on color vibrancy. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same saturation within the printer's color gamut. This setting is suitable for printing charts and graphs.	
[Absolute]	This option is not commonly used. Select this setting for special uses such as printing logo colors.	
[Calibration and Ink Limit]	Color conversion is disabled and printing is performed as defined in the data. The total ink is limited by the ink limit settings in the media. Depending on the item selected under [**Color Settings**], this may not be displayed.	
[Calibration]	Color conversion is disabled and printing is performed as defined in the data. There is no ink limit, so the surface of the media may be oversaturated. Depending on the item selected under [**Color Settings**], this may not be displayed.	
[Simulation Target Profiles]	Selects the profile to use as the base for the color you want to output.	
[RGB]	Sets the RGB profile for data created with RGB and ordinary photo data. Default value: Roland_DG_WideGamut_RGB.icc	
AdobeRGB1998.icc	Produces most of the RGB color gamut (range). This setting is suitable for printing images with a wide range of colors.	
Roland_DG_SignRGB_v2.icc	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.	

Item			Description	Refer to
		Roland_DG_WideGamut_RGB.icc	It has a wide color gamut and high saturation, and produces colors such as gray and peach more naturally.	
		Roland_SignRGB.icc	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.	
		sRGB Color Space Profile.icm	Produces a color space used for general computer monitors. Compared to AdobeRGB1998, sRGB has a narrow color gamut and produces muted colors.	
		TrueRichColor_BS_RGB.icc	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_BV_RGB, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.	
		TrueRichColor_BV_RGB.icc	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors with high saturation.	
		TrueRichColor_DS_RGB.icc	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_DV_RGB, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.	
		TrueRichColor_DV_RGB.icc	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors with high saturation.	
		TrueRichColor_Std_RGB.icc	It has a wide color gamut, while producing natural-looking colors.	
		TrueRichColor_V_RGB.icc	It has a wide color gamut, and produces colors with higher saturation than TrueRichColor_Std_RGB.	
	[CMYK]		Sets the CYMK profile for data created with CYMK. Default value: RolandWideGamut_CMYK.icc	
		CoatedFOGRA39.icc	Applies the Fogra39 standard color used for offset printing in Europe. It is distributed by Adobe.	
		DIC_Standard_Color_SFC_1_0_2.icm	Applies the DIC standard color, which produces relatively sharp colors.	
		eciCMYK.icc	Applies the Fogra53 standard color for wide color gamut printing in Europe.	
		EuroscaleCoated.icc	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in Europe.	
		EuroscaleUncoated.icc		
		GRACoL2006_Coated1v2.icc	Applies the GRACol standard color used for offset printing in the United States.	
		ISOcoated_v2_eci.icc	Applies the Fogra39 standard color used for offset printing in Europe. It is distributed by the European Color Initiative (ECI).	
		JapanColor2011Coated.icm	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in Japan, which produces overall deep colors.	
		JapanColor97.icm		
		JapanStandard.icc	Applies the standard color (based on JapanColor) used for offset printing in Japan, which produces slightly pale colors.	
		RolandWideGamut2_CMYK.icc	It has a wide color gamut and high saturation, and produces colors such as gray and peach more naturally. If they both appear, select **RolandWideGamut_CMYK 2**, which has a broader color gamut. However before updating VersaWorks, to configure the **RolandWideGamut_CMYK** setting and output the same colors, select **RolandWideGamut_CMYK**.	
		RolandWideGamut_CMYK.icc		
		Roland_DG_Deep_CMYK_1.0.icc	Produces overall deep-colored images suitable for signs.	
		Roland_SignCMYK.icc	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.	

Item	Description	Refer to
TOYO Offset Coat 1.1.icm	Applies the Toyo Ink standard color, which produces relatively pale colors.	
TrueRichColor_BS_CMYK.icc	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_BV_CMYK, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.	
TrueRichColor_BV_CMYK.icc	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors with high saturation.	
TrueRichColor_DS_CMYK.icc	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_DV_CMYK, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.	
TrueRichColor_DV_CMYK.icc	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors with high saturation.	
TrueRichColor_Std_CMYK.icc	It has a wide color gamut, while producing natural-looking colors.	
TrueRichColor_V_CMYK.icc	It has a wide color gamut, and produces colors with higher saturation than TrueRichColor_Std_CMYK.	
USWebCoatedSWOP.icc	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in the United States.	
USWebUncoated.icc		
[Primary Color Retention Settings]	Preserves C, M, Y, and K individual colors and secondary colors (C+M, M+Y, Y+C).	
[Cyan]		
[Magenta]		
[Yellow]		
[Black]		
[All Secondary Colors]		
[Vector/Text]	Sets the [**Matching Method**] and [**Simulation Target Profiles**] for the illustration or text.	
[Matching Method]	Same as [**Matching Method**] under [**Raster**].	
[Simulation Target Profiles]	Same as [**Simulation Target Profiles**] under [**Raster**].	
[Apply Text Only]	Enables preservation of the primary colors only for text when turned on.	
[Full Page]	The same color conversion is applied to the entire page, with no distinction between images, illustrations, and text.	
[Matching Method]	Same as [**Matching Method**] under [**Raster**].	
[Simulation Target Profiles]	Same as [**Simulation Target Profiles**] under [**Raster**].	
[Specify Printer Profile and Ignore Default]	Select this checkbox to enable the selection of the printer profile (output profile). Default value: Off	
[Level Adjustment]	Adjusts the color saturation and contrast of the entire image.	P. 194 Adjusting the Color Saturation, Contrast, and Brightness of the Entire Image
[Set individual level]	Select this checkbox to individually adjust the ink that was selected with [**Quality Settings**]>[**Mode**]. Default value: Selected	
[All Colors]	When the [**Set individual level**] checkbox is not selected, the level of all colors is adjusted.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Contrast]	Move the bar to the + (right) direction to increase and to the - (left) direction to decrease the contrast.	
[Brightness]	Move the bar to the + (right) direction to increase and to the - (left) direction to decrease the brightness.	
[Reset ALL]	Click this button to reset all the level adjustment parameters to their default values (0). You can check the adjusted image in the layout area preview.	
[Tone Curves]	Use the tone curve to fine-tune the tone and color of the image. Click ▸ to display the details window.	P. 195 Adjusting the Tone Curve
[Channel]	A [Spot Color] is displayed according to the ink type. Default value: [Apply to All Colors]	
[Apply to All Colors]		
[Cyan]		
[Magenta]		
[Yellow]		
[Black]		
[Show All Channels]	Display channels other than the curve for the ink being adjusted. Use this as an aid when setting. Default value: Off	
[Reset]	Resets the adjusted tone curve.	
[Load...]	You can open a tone curve where the settings were saved.	P. 196 Applying the Tone Curve Adjustment to Other Jobs
[Save...]	You can assign a name and save a set tone curve. The file extension is .rcv.	
[Optimizer]	Adjusts the optimizer ink amount.	P. 73 Setting the Optimizer Ink Amount
[Optimizer Level]		
[Printer Color Match Settings]	Adjust for variation in the output colors resulting from changes over time with the same model or from individual differences with different machines of the same model.	
[None]	Printer color matching is not performed.	
[Printer Color Match (Basic)]	This is enabled when printer data is registered with [Printer Color Match (Basic)].	P. 206 Obtaining a Stable Output Color
[Reference Printer Data]		
[Color Settings]		
[Target Printer Data]		
[Color Settings]		
[Printer Color Match (Extended)]	This is enabled when [Color Matching Group], simulation profiles, and ICC profiles under [Printer Color Match (Extended)] are registered in advance. [Color Matching with Same Model] and [Color Matching with Different Model] tabs are available.	P. 217 Using the Color Matching Function (Add-on)
[Setting Name]		
[Preset]		

[Color Replacement]

Item		Description	Refer to
[Nearest Color Finder]		If a [Spot Color] is not output as intended because the media or machine has been changed, adjust the output color of the [Spot Color]. First, print the chart of the colors nearest to the [Spot Color] used in the job. The chart can be used to find the desired color and apply it to adjust the color to the intended output.	P. 275 Adjusting the Output Color of a [Spot Color]: [Nearest Color Finder]
	[Apply Adjusted Color]	Select this checkbox to apply the color adjusted with [Nearest Color Finder]. However, when the [Convert Spot Color] checkbox under [Spot Colors] is selected, must be displayed for [Nearest Color Finder].	
[Spot Colors]		[Color Name] and [Output Color] of the [Spot Color] set on the job are displayed.	P. 236 Spot Color
	[Convert Spot Color]	Select the checkbox to convert the [Spot Color] to [Output Color].	
	[Details]	Click this item to enable [Edit Output Color]. You can also check information such as [Spot Color Name], [Library Name], [Library Output], and [Printer Output] of the [Spot Color].	
[Special Color Settings]		[Input Color] and [Output Color] of the [Special Color] set on the job are displayed.	P. 292 Special Color
	[Convert Special Color (Value Specified Color)]	Select the checkbox to convert the [Special Color] to [Output Color].	
	[Details]	Click this item to enable [Edit Output Color]. You can also check information such as [Input Color], [Library Name], [Library Output], and [Printer Output] of the [Special Color].	
[Matching Method]		This applies to both [Spot Color] and [Special Color].	P. 238 Printing with [Spot Color] P. 294 Printing with [Special Color]
	[Perceptual]	Converts colors while maintaining tonal balance. The color values are changed, but their values relative to each other remain the same. This setting is suitable for photographic images.	
	[Colorimetric]	Converts colors with emphasis on brightness. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same brightness within the printer's color gamut.	
	[Saturation]	Converts colors with emphasis on color vibrancy. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same saturation within the printer's color gamut. This setting is suitable for printing charts and graphs.	
	[Absolute]	This option is not commonly used. Select this setting for special uses such as printing logo colors.	

[Mark]

Sets the details when marks and job information are added to and printed with the job.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Marks]	Configures the crop mark, margin mark, and other settings.	
[Type]	Configures the settings for adding a variety of marks.	P. 97 Adding Trim Marks or Margin Marks
[No Marks]	Trim marks and margin marks are not printed.	
[Trim Marks]	Prints trim marks added at the four corners of the job.	
[Margin Marks]	Leaves margins around the job and prints the margin marks at the four corners of the margin.	
[Horizontal]	Specifies the horizontal margin of the job.	
[Vertical]	Specifies the vertical margin of the job.	
[FOTOBA Cutline Marks]	When a Fotoba cutter is in use, adds specialized cut marks before printing.	
[Print Location]	Specify the positions in which to print the cut marks.	
[Top]		
[Bottom]		
[Left]		
[Right]		
[Image/Mark Spacing]	Specify the spacing between the image and the marks.	
[Vertical]		
[Horizontal]		
[KALAXY Cutline Marks]	When a Kala cutter is in use, adds KALAXY marks before printing.	
[Horizontal Line Type]	Specify the number of horizontal lines.	
[Single Line]		
[Double Line]		
[Add stop marks]	Select this checkbox to print a stop mark.	
[KALA RoXY Cutline Marks]	When a Kala cutter is in use, adds KALA RoXY marks before printing.	
[Horizontal Line Type]		
[Single Line]		
[Add stop marks]	Select this checkbox to print a stop mark.	
[Neolt Cutline Marks]	When a Neolt cutter is in use, adds specialized cut marks before printing.	
[Graphtec Registration Marks]	When a Graphtec cutter is in use, adds specialized cut marks before printing.	
[Pattern]	Specify the registration mark type.	
[4 Points Type 1]		
[4 Points Type 2]		
[Segment Area Type 1]		
[Segment Area Type 2]		

Item	Description	Refer to
[Barcode Type]	Specify the positions in which to print the barcode. With [**Continuous Operation (Front Edge Only)**], the barcode is printed after the other printing finishes. With [**Continuous Operation (Rear Edge Only)**], the barcode is printed before the other printing starts.	
[None]		
[Standard]		
[Continuous Operation (Both Edges)]		
[Continuous Operation (Front Edge Only)]		
[Continuous Operation (Rear Edge Only)]		
[Margin]	Specify the distance from the image to the registration mark.	
[Min Segment Length]	Specify the minimum length of the intermediate registration mark.	
[White around marks]	To make it easier to read registration marks and barcodes on transparent or milky white media, print the Wh plate around the registration marks/barcodes.	
[OPOS Marks]	When a Summa cutter is in use, adds specialized cut marks before printing.	
[Barcode Type]	Specify the positions in which to print the barcode. With [**OPOS (Bottom only)**], the barcode is printed after the other printing finishes.	
[None]		
[OPOS (Both)]		
[OPOS (Bottom only)]		
[Margin]	Specify the distance from the image to the OPOS mark.	
[Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)]	Specifies the crop mark setting range. However crop marks cannot be added when the image width is less than 60 mm (2.36 in.).	P. 187 Applying Crop Marks Individually to Multiple Images
[Entire Area]	Adds crop marks to the entire image. However the crop marks are automatically printed by the printer. Therefore, the crop marks are not displayed in the preview.	
[For Each Row]	Crop marks will be applied with the row of images treated as a single group.	
[For Each Data Entry]	Crop marks will be applied to each individual image.	
[Job Property Label]	This is a method of printing information such as the print settings and the print date under the image.	P. 101 Adding Job Properties
[Print Job Properties]	Select this checkbox to print the model name and serial number of the printer as well as the job name below the printed item. The following items can also be added.	
[File Name]	Prints the file name.	
[Layout]	Prints the number of copies and scale.	
[Quality Settings]	Prints the current quality settings.	
[Color Settings]	Prints the details of the color settings.	
[Printer Color Match]	Prints the color matching information.	

Item		Description	Refer to
	[File Format]	Prints the settings of the [**Spot Color**] and [**Special Color**] (only when the conversion is enabled).	
	[Device Controls]	Prints the feed calibration (only when [**Use Printer Settings**] is not selected).	
	[Job Management]	Prints the job handling after printing.	
	[Clip and Tile]	Prints the location of the tile (clipped location and tile size for a clipped image).	
	[Special Color]	Prints the generated pattern of the automatically generated plate, the plate density, and the corrected value.	
	[Date/Time]	Prints the date and time that the job was processed.	
	[Notes]	Prints the text entered in the input field.	
[Color Bar]		Print a color bar on the right side or left side, or color bars on both sides of the job to improve the discharge stability. Use [**Width**] to specify the color bar width and [**Spacing**] to specify the spacing between the color bar(s) and the job.	P. 106 Adding Color Bars
	[Left]		
	[Right]		
	[Width]		
	[Spacing]		

[Printer Controls]

Sets the printer control method during printing.

Item	Description	Refer to
[General]	Sets the sheet cut-off after output and page space.	
[Cut Sheet after Output]	Cuts the sheet after output. Default value: [None]	P. 56 Cutting the Media after Output
[None]	Sheet cutting is not performed.	
[Sheet Cutting]	Sheet cutting is performed.	
[Perforated Sheet Cutting]	Perforated sheet cutting is performed.	
[Perforated Sheet Cutting (Leaving Both Edges)]	Perforated sheet cutting in which both edges of the media are not cut is performed.	
[Use Custom Settings]	Change [Page Space]. When [Sheet Cutting], [Perforated Sheet Cutting], or [Perforated Sheet Cutting (Leaving Both Edges)] under [Cut Sheet after Output] is selected, the margin to the cutting position can be set. Default value: Varies depending on the printer.	P. 58 Setting the Space to the Next Printing Start Location P. 56 Cutting the Media after Output
[Page Space]	Sets the space to the next printing start location or sheet cut position.	
[Feed Calibration Controls]	Configures the settings in order to alleviate the horizontal bands that occur during printing. Default value: [Use Printer Settings]	P. 59 Determining How to Alleviate Horizontal Bands: [Feed Calibration Controls]
[Use Default Media Settings]	Printing is performed with the recommended values for the media selected with [Quality]>[Quality Settings]>[Media Name].	
[Use Custom Settings]	Printing is performed with the settings configured on the printer.	
[Use Printer Settings]	Printing is performed with the values set in this window.	
[Feed Calibration]	If you select [Use Custom Settings], enter the [Feed Calibration].	
[Rotary Controls]	The optional rotary axis unit is used to print on a cylindrical object (media) while it is rotated. Click [Automatic Calculation] to calculate the number of nozzles (the feed length) to use.	P. 147 Printing Using the Rotary Axis Unit
[Nozzle Amount to Use in Printing]		
[Automatic Calculation]		
[Other Controls]	Specifies the control method for [Vacuum Power], [Dry Time], and [Head Height]. Default value: [Use Printer Settings]	
[Use Default Media Settings]	Printing is performed with the recommended values for the media selected with [Quality]>[Quality Settings]>[Media Name].	
[Use Custom Settings]	Printing is performed with the settings configured on the printer.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Use Printer Settings]	Printing is performed using the [**Vacuum Power**], [**Dry Time**], and [**Head Height**] which are set in this window.	P. 60 Using Media That Wrinkles Easily/Does Not Move Smoothly: [**Vacuum Power**]
[Vacuum Power]	Sets the intensity of the vacuum that holds the media flat on the platen. This can be set when [Use Custom Settings] is selected.	
[Normal]	Sets the intensity of the vacuum that holds the media flat on the platen. This can be set when [Use Custom Settings] is selected.	
[Strong]	Sets the intensity of the vacuum that holds the media flat on the platen. This can be set when [Use Custom Settings] is selected.	
[Dry Time]	Sets the time (in minutes) to wait before printing the next page or cutting. This can be set when [Use Custom Settings] is selected.	P. 61 Setting the Drying Time after Printing
[Head Height]	Sets the height of the print head. This can be set when [Use Custom Settings] is selected. Normally do not change this setting.	P. 62 Adjusting Print Head Height to Match Media Thickness
[Heater Controls]	Specifies the [**Heater Controls**] setting method. Default value: [**Use Printer Settings**]	P. 63 Setting the Heater/Dryer Temperature
[Use Default Media Settings]	Printing is performed using the settings for each media that were configured with VersaWorks.	
[Use Custom Settings]	Printing is performed with the settings configured on the printer.	
[Use Printer Settings]	Sets the temperature for [**Pre Heater**], [**Print Heater**], and [**Dryer**].	
[Pre Heater]		
[Print Heater]		
[Dryer]		
[Cylindrical Control]	Specifies the printing position of the cylindrical printer.	P. 153 Printing with a Cylindrical Printer
[Starting Offset for Printing]	Sets the printing position in the rotation direction.	
[Printing Reference Height]	Displays the print origin position specified with the printer.	
[Support Line Color]	Specifies the colors of the [**Starting Offset for Printing**], the [**Printing Reference Height**], and the double circle.	
[UV Lamp Control]	Specifies the UV lamp control method.	
[Operation Mode]	Specifies the target for irradiation by the UV lamp.	
[Print]	This is the default setting. Printing and UV irradiation are performed.	
[UV Post Cure Only]	You can configure the settings so that only the UV irradiation matching that was performed during printing is performed again after printing.	P. 66 Performing Only UV Lamp Irradiation
[Scan Speed]	This can be set when [**UV Post Cure Only**] is selected.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Change UV Lamp Irradiation Intensity]	Adjusts the irradiation intensity of the printer's UV lamp.	P. 64 Reducing the UV Lamp Irradiation Intensity
[Irradiation Intensity]		
[Print Size Correction]	You can correct a shifted printing result by adjusting the [X] and [Y] sizes of the print data. If you enter the measured sizes (the actual print size) and the expected sizes (the size to be printed), the correction factors can be automatically calculated and easily set. You can also enter the correction factors directly.	P. 65 Correcting the Dimensions in the Printing Results
[X]	Enter the correction factors directly.	
[Y]		
[Correction Calculator]	Click this button to display the [Correction Calculator] window.	
[Correction in X-Direction]	Sets the correction factor for the horizontal direction. Can be set within a range of -5.00% to +5.00%.	
[Expected Size]	Enter the size to be printed.	
[Measured Size]	Enter the measured size of the printing result.	
[Correction Factor]	This is automatically calculated on the basis of the entered values.	
[Correction in Y-Direction]	Sets the correction factor for the vertical direction. Can be set within a range of -5.00% to +5.00%.	
[Expected Size]	Enter the size to be printed.	
[Measured Size]	Enter the measured size of the printing result.	
[Correction Factor]	This is automatically calculated on the basis of the entered values.	

[Cut Controls]

Sets the printer control method during cutting.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Operation Mode]	Selects the printing and cutting operation mode.	VW7 First Step Guide
[Operation Mode]		
[Print & Cut]	Select to perform printing and cutting continuously.	
[Cut & Print]	This method uses print data including cutting lines to perform cutting first followed by printing. Performing cutting first reduces the drying time compared to cutting after printing. However depending on the conditions of the media after cutting, there may be an effect on printing.	
[Print Only]	Select to perform printing only.	
[Cut Only]	Select to perform cutting only.	
[Cutting Options]	Configures the cutting operation mode and detailed settings. Detailed settings default values: All cleared	
[Cut All Paths]	All paths will be recognized as cutting lines and will be cut regardless of whether they are drawn with the [**Spot Color**] (CutContour). This can be selected from [**Queue Properties**].	
[Cut Image Boundaries]	Cuts the border of the job regardless of whether a cutting line is present.	
[None]	The border is not cut.	
[Normal Cut]	The border is cut.	
[Perforated Cut]	Perforated cutting is performed for the border.	
[Return to Origin After Print]	Pulls back the media after printing.	
[Cut Passes]	Specifies the [**Cut Passes**].	
[Execute PREFEED Operation]	Feeds out media according to the size of the data before starting output, thereby preventing the media from being pulled out with excessive force. The media is then pulled back to the output-start location.	
[Cutting Conditions Settings]	Configures printer cutting conditions such as the blade force.	P. 179 Configuring the Cutting Conditions
[Cutting Speed]	Enter [**Cutting Speed**] in cm/s.	
[Cutting Force]	Enter [**Cutting Force**] in units of gram-force.	
[Blade Offset]	Enter the blade offset value (the distance between the tip and the center of the blade) in millimeters. Enter the offset value for the blade being used.	
[Conditions for Cutting Perforated Lines]	Configures the perforation and half-cut settings for perforated cutting. Default value: Cleared	
[Perforation Length]	Sets the length of the part that will be cut through to the backing paper. Default value: 20 mm (0.79 in.)	
[Perforation Force]	Sets the blade force for the part that will be cut through to the backing paper. Default value: 150 gf	
[Half-cut Length]	Sets the length of the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper. Default value: 1,000 mm (39.37 in.)	

Item		Description	Refer to
	[**Half-cut Force**]	Sets the blade force for the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper. Default value: 1 gf	

[Job Management]

Configures settings related to the processing of jobs registered to the job list. Many menu items are configured from [**Queue Properties**].

Item	Description	Refer to
[Hot Folder]	Sets the hot folder. The files placed in the set folder are automatically loaded in to Queue A.	P. 37 Outputting Using a Hot Folder
[Action for Incoming Jobs]	Sets the operation when a job was added to the job list.	
[Action]	Specifies the job processing method. Default value: [**Do Nothing**]	
[Do Nothing]	Neither processing by the RIP nor printing is performed when a job is added to the job list.	
[RIP Only]	Only processing by the RIP is automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.	P. 77 Processing a Job by the RIP or Printing a Job Automatically
[RIP and Print]	Both processing by the RIP and printing are automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.	
[Auto Rotate to Save Media]	When the length of a job is bigger than its width, the job is rotated 90 degrees and arranged on the media in order to reduce the length. Default value: Selected	P. 77 Processing a Job by the RIP or Printing a Job Automatically
[Rotate jobs to match the user view]	When you set this to on, printing is performed with the same top-bottom orientation as the print data. Default value • ON: Flat-bed model newly registered to Ver 7.7.0 or later • OFF: All other products	P. 55 Printing with the Same Top-Bottom Orientation as the Print Data
[Jobs are automatically nested on the following conditions.]		P. 75 Automatically Creating a Nested Job
[By Time]	When the specified time is reached, a nested job is created. Processing by the RIP and printing are not started until the nested job is created. Furthermore, if you set [**Set Time Interval**], nested jobs are created according to the set interval of time. Default value: Cleared	
[Time]		
[Set Time Interval]		
[By Paper Length]	Jobs are nested until the specified media length is reached. A nested job is created when the specified media length is reached. Processing by the RIP and printing are not started until the nested job is created. You also will not be able to check the state of nesting in the layout window. Default value: Cleared	
[Length]		
[By Number of Jobs]	A nested job is created when the number of jobs registered in the queue folder reaches the specified value. Default value: Cleared Default value: 2	
[By Number of Jobs]		
[Compose]	When the specified number of jobs for the composed job is reached, the composed job is created.	
[RIP and Print]	Sets how jobs are processed by the RIP and the job details to save when printing finishes.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[RIP while Printing]	Use the following procedure to configure the settings so that jobs are printed while they are processed by the RIP. However in some cases the function may be disabled. Default value: Cleared	P. 79 Printing while Processing by the RIP
[Action After Printing]	This section explains how to process a job after printing is completed. Default value: [Save Job]	P. 78 Setting Processing after Printing Is Completed
[Action]	This section explains how to process a job after printing is completed.	
[Save Job]	Jobs will be saved after printing finishes. The data processed by the RIP is kept, so you can print the job again without having to process it by the RIP.	
[Delete RIP Data]	All intermediate data such as the data processed by the RIP will be deleted, but the job will remain in the job list. To print the job again, you will have to process it by the RIP again.	
[Delete Job]	Jobs will be deleted completely and will be deleted from the job list.	

[Clip and Tile]

Configures the settings for tiling and overlaps.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Clipping]	Configures clip settings to select and print only a part of the image. This function is useful when you want to print just a part of a job with a large printing size and check the color tone or picture quality before printing the whole job.	P. 107 Printing the Selected Area of the Image: [Clip Image]
[Clip Image]	Select this checkbox to enable selecting part of the image.	
[Top Left Position]	Enter the location of the upper-left corner of the clip area with the origin at the upper-left corner of the image.	
[X]		
[Y]		
[Size]	Enter the width and the height of the clip area.	
[W]		
[H]		
[Maintain Clipped Position]	You can print a clipped image maintained at its original position. If you do not specify this setting, the clipped image will automatically be placed at the origin.	
[Tiling]	Divides an image into tiles that can be printed on the media for printing when you want to print a job that is too large to fit on the media that is being used.	P. 111 Tiling an Image
[Manual Tiling]	Sets the number of tiles and the tile size.	
[Location]		
[Row]		
[Column]		
[W]		
[H]		
[Tile Size]	Divides the job evenly at the specified size with the origin at the upper-left corner of the media.	
[Size]	Specifies the division media or size. When [**CustomCUT**] is selected, specifies [**W**] and [**H**]. When [**CustomROLL**] is selected, specifies [**W**].	
[W]		
[H]		
[Number of Tiles]	Divides the job into the number of tiles specified with [**Horizontal**] and [**Vertical**]. All tiles have the same size.	
[Horizontal]		
[Vertical]		
[Place alternately]	The tiles in even-numbered columns will be rotated 180 degrees. This will make the seam color difference less visible when the tiles are pasted together.	
[Overlap]	Sets the overlap width for divided images (tiles) when dividing a large job and printing the divided parts (tile printing).	P. 103 Adding an Overlap Width for Tiled Printing
[Position]	Specifies the overlap position using the Up, Down, Left, and Right icons. Default value: No	
[Size]	Specifies the overlap width.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Print Overlap Lines]	Select this checkbox to print overlap lines.	
[Thickness]	Sets the line width for the overlap lines.	
[Color Settings]	Sets the line color for the overlap lines.	
[Cut Line Length]	Specifies the length of the trim marks. When you set this to 0 mm (0 in.), [Generate Cut Position Adjustment Job] is displayed in the [Edit Design] menu that appears when you right-click a job. Default value: 10 mm (0.39 in.)	P. 150 Configuring Cutting Settings for Landscape Print Data

[Variable Data]

Configures settings for replacing portions of the image to create output with unique images or text per copy.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Variable Data Settings]	Loads a variable print data file and configures various settings.	P. 120 What Is Variable Printing?
[Enable Variable Data Printing]	This checkbox can be selected when a file for variable printing has been added to the job. • : Specifies and loads a data file. • : Saves the data file that was edited with the variable data settings. • : Adds a line to the data file. • : Deletes a line from the data file. Settings such as the text font and image alignment can be configured when the [Enable Variable Data Printing] checkbox is selected and a data file (file created with csv or other means containing the path information of the image file that you want to insert) is loaded.	
[Type]	The item to edit varies depending on the target. • [Image] • [Text] • [Barcode]	
[Text]	When the data file is loaded, data that starts with strings that denote paths (such as "C:\") is automatically recognized as image data, otherwise it is automatically recognized as text data.	
[Font]	Selects the font type.	
[FontSize]	Sets the font size.	
[Tracking]	Sets the spacing between two characters. Set this to 100 to make the spacing one-character wide.	
[Auto Sizing]	Select this checkbox to automatically adjust the font size to fit the text in the variable field when the text is larger than the variable field.	
[Alignment]	Sets the alignment of the text in the variable field.	
[Rotate]	Rotates the text in the variable field in units of 90 degrees.	
[Mirror]	Horizontally mirrors the text in the variable field.	
[Opacity]	Sets the opacity of the entire variable field. Set this to 0% to make the target transparent.	
[Draw on White Background]	Select this checkbox to print the background object on top when the background object and the variable field overlap.	
[Effect]	Click the following icons to set the text effect:	
[Offset]	Sets the offset widths of shadow characters as percentages.	
[Stroke]	Sets the stroke widths of outlined characters in points.	
[Color]	Sets the color of the text and the background color inside the variable field.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Color Settings]	Click the square to display the [Color Management] window.	
[ColorSpace]	Select from [RGB], [CMYK], or, [Transparent]. [White] can also be selected for text and backgrounds. If you select [RGB] or [CMYK], you can specify the corresponding values.	
[Field Special Color Plate Generation]	Generates spot color plates for the area.	
[Generated Pattern]	Select the area for generating the spot color plate from [Print Area (Color-Based)] or [Entire Field].	
[Density]	Sets the spot color plate density.	
[Image]	Sets the image for variable printing.	
[Fit]	Sets whether to fit the image in the variable field.	
[Alignment]	Selects the alignment of the image in the variable field.	
[Rotate]	Rotates the image in the variable field in units of 90 degrees.	
[Mirror]	Horizontally mirrors the image in the variable field.	
[Opacity]	Sets the opacity of the image. Set this to 0% to make the target transparent.	
[Draw on White Background]	Select this checkbox to print the background object on top when the background object and the variable field overlap.	
[Color]	Sets the background color inside the variable field.	
[Color Settings]	Click the square to display the [Color Management] window.	
[ColorSpace]	Select from [RGB], [CMYK], [Transparent], or [White]. If you select [RGB] or [CMYK], you can specify the corresponding values.	
[Field Special Color Plate Generation]	Generates spot color plates for the area.	
[Generated Pattern]	Select the area for generating the spot color plate from [Print Area (Color-Based)] or [Entire Field].	
[Density]	Sets the spot color plate density.	
[Barcode]	Adds a barcode or QR code to the specified area.	
[Code Type]	Select from the barcode ([EAN-13] or [UPC-A]) or [QR Code].	
[Rotate]	Rotates the barcode or QR code in the variable field in units of 90 degrees.	
[Mirror]	Horizontally mirrors the barcode or QR code in the variable field.	
[Error Correction Level]	Select the correction level to ensure the QR code can be read correctly even if part of the code is dirty or missing. The percentage of missing data that can be recovered increases in the order of L, M, Q, and H, but the data size also increases.	
[Field Special Color Plate Generation]	Generates spot color plates for the area.	
[Generated Pattern]	Select the area for generating the spot color plate from [Print Area (Color-Based)] or [Entire Field].	
[Density]	Sets the spot color plate density.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Field Settings]	You can set the size and location of the variable field. Either drag the variable field in the layout area or else select [Field Settings] and specify [X], [Y], [W], and [H].	
[X]		
[Y]		
[W]		
[H]		
[Reset]	The variable field that was changed in VersaWorks is reset to the job status.	
[Show All Variable Data Fields]	Displays all variable fields in the job.	

[Customize]

Configures the settings for showing/hiding the printing setting tabs and tab names.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Tab Display Settings]	Sets the display method of the printing setting tabs.	P. 12 Customizing the Display of the [Settings] and [Queue Properties] Tabs
[Show Labels]	Select this checkbox to display labels below the printing setting tabs. Default value: Selected	
[Tabs to Show and Their Order]	Sets the printing setting tab to display.	
[Move Up]	Change the order of the printing setting tabs.	
[Move Down]		
[<<]	Shows the selected tab.	
[>>]	Hides the selected tab.	
[Reset]	Returns the display of the printing setting tabs to the default values.	
[Tabs to Hide]	Displays the printing setting tabs that are hidden.	


Roland